

ELEMENTARY CLASSICS

UC-NRLF



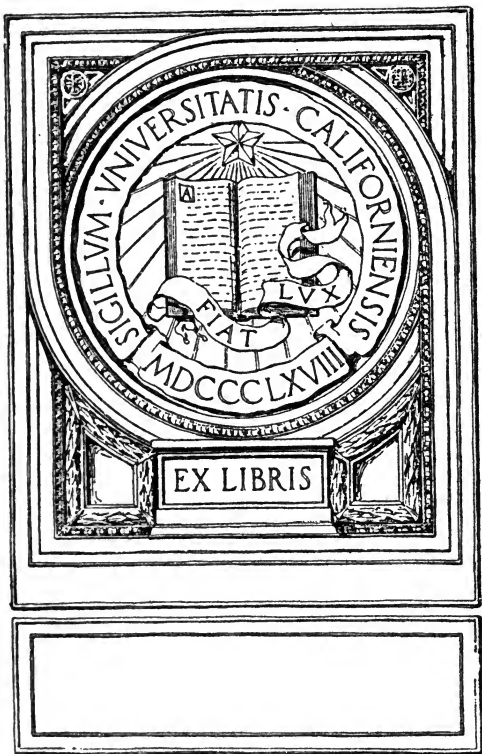
\$B 267 087



# CAESAR AND THE GERMANS

A. H. DAVIS  
M.A.











# CAESAR AND THE GERMANS



MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED

LONDON • BOMBAY • CALCUTTA  
MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

NEW YORK • BOSTON • CHICAGO  
DALLAS • SAN FRANCISCO

THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, LTD.

TORONTO

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



JULIUS CAESAR.  
*In the British Museum.*

Elementary Classics

# Caesar And the Germans

*Adapted from Caesar, 'de Bello Gallico,' and edited,  
with Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, &c., by*

A. H. Davis, M.A.

Sometime Classical Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge

Formerly Assistant Master at Dover College

Late Head Master of the Preparatory to Bromsgrove School

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS

MACMILLAN AND CO., LIMITED  
ST. MARTIN'S STREET, LONDON

1915

PA 2096.

D2

1915

***COPYRIGHT***

## PREFACE

THIS book is intended for use by pupils who have got far enough to deal with compound sentences in Latin, and can 'spot' and parse the ordinary verb and noun forms.

The earlier part is a good deal simplified, so that Part I. could be used by a lower form, the whole book by a higher one, who would be able to run through Part I. rapidly.

In Part I. the speeches in *Or. Obliqua* are turned into *Or. Recta*, *Or. Obliqua* being put in italics throughout the book. For convenience of reference, and comparison with other editions, the number and sequence of the chapters has not been changed from the original. After Part I., there is very little alteration of the text, a few longer sentences being slightly shortened, and, occasionally, causal clauses put into brackets.

As the text proved rather longer than was anticipated, the latter part had to be considerably shortened. I was particularly sorry to omit the accounts—supposed now, with the geographical chapters, not to have been written by Caesar—of the German animals

from Part IV. (Book VI.), and the story of *Baculus* (VI. 28).

The geographical notes seemed necessary for the comprehension of the text. It has often been a source of annoyance to me to find a map and the text fail to agree, or to find a map differing in important respects from those usually accepted, but without any explanation of the differences.

The necessity of shortening the book has prevented the inclusion of 'English into Latin' exercises. I should like to take this opportunity of recommending the turning into Latin of idiomatic or slang phrases, in order to practise the phrases in the text: *e.g.* after reading page 1 sentences might be given like 'If you let the cat out of the bag, you'll get it hot.' It is most important for young students to understand that it is the sense, not the mere words, that requires turning into the other language. Exercises might also be given in turning the *Or. Recta* back into *Or. Obliqua*, or the reverse.

Some of the 'Notes' may be considered more advanced than beginners require. Such may be passed over by young pupils, or they may be useful at times to the teacher. It is desirable, however, for more advanced classes to read through a book or two of *Caesar* fairly rapidly. The questions in the 'Notes' are meant as 'cautions' to boys when 'preparing' the translation.



The notes were written, as a rule, without reference to the opinions of other commentators, but were revised after reading Mr. Rice Holmes' edition of the text and his *Conquest of Gaul*. Every student of Caesar owes an immense debt to Mr. Rice Holmes. His books put forward the facts—or other scholars' opinions—in a masterly and impartial manner, give the reader his decision, where he has formed one, or leave the matter undecided. Whether you agree with him or not (and I find I particularly disagree with him as to the construction of the bridge), you must be the better for his frank discussion of the difficulties. In writing of 'difficulties,' I have been in doubt at times in turning Caesar's Or. Obliqua into Or. Recta, e.g. on p. 14, l. 319, where the original runs *Itaque se proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum*, it puzzled myself—and a more competent scholar—to find out whether *proxima nocte* is correct for 'to-night,' i.e. 'this very night' in Or. Recta.

Being unable to find the Latin phrase, I have left it. Perhaps someone will kindly help me out of the difficulty. I was also in doubt as to p. 5, l. 55, where I have represented *pararentur* by *parandi sunt*. I find Mr. Rice Holmes takes the same view.

I should like especially to thank my friend Mr. E. H. Furness, of Bromsgrove School, for looking over most of the proof-sheets and for many valuable suggestions; also Professor Haverfield, for kindly

answering some questions on the geography and illustrations.

Here I end my work, and dedicate it to all who will use it with thought, hoping that it may give them some small fraction of the benefit that the editor has received in compiling it.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	
Caesar's Life . . . . .	xv
The Germans . . . . .	xviii
The Army . . . . .	xxiv
<b>HINTS ON TRANSLATION</b> . . . . .	xxxv
<b>TEXT</b>	
Caesar and Ariovistus . . . . .	1
The Treachery of the Aduatuci . . . . .	31
Caesar's dealings with two German Tribes : The Usipetes and Tencteri . . . . .	38
Caesar and the Suebi . . . . .	55
<b>NOTES</b> . . . . .	60
<b>GEOGRAPHICAL NOTES</b> . . . . .	92
<b>INDEX TO WORDS AND CONSTRUCTIONS MENTIONED IN THE NOTES</b> . . . . .	105
<b>VOCABULARY</b> . . . . .	108



# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
JULIUS CAESAR . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
<i>In the British Museum.</i>	

The portrait, which has suffered from cleaning, but is undoubtedly ancient, represents Caesar in later life; he is inclined to baldness, and his cheeks are shrunk. We know that he is said to have worn a wreath to hide his baldness; and Suetonius also says that for the same purpose he combed his scanty hair forward, as we see it represented on this head.

ROMAN SOLDIERS . . . . .	xxv
--------------------------	-----

ROMAN CENTURION . . . . .	xxvi
---------------------------	------

*From a relief at Verona of Imperial date.*

This is the grave-stone of Q. Sertorius, a centurion of the Eleventh Legion, known as the 'Claudia pia fidelis.' He carries the wand (*vitis*) of office, and wears the *corona civica* of oak-leaves (little but the tie of this crown is visible in the illustration). Over his tunic he wears a coat of scale-armour (*lorica squamata*); his phaleræ are fastened on the usual framework, and two *torques* hang from his neck. The circular object by his left hand is the pommel of his sword. He also wears greaves (*ocreae*) and boots (*caligae*), and carries his cloak (*sagum*).

ROMAN CAMP . . . . .	xxx
----------------------	-----

ROMAN STANDARD-BEARER . . . . .	xxxiii
---------------------------------	--------

*From a grave-stone at Bonn, of the first century A.D.*

Pintaius the *signifer*, from whose grave-stone this illustration is taken, wears over his head and shoulders a skin, which covers the helmet of which the cheek-pieces are visible. Under his jerkin is

a coat of mail (*lorica*), and under that a *tunica*. On his feet are toeless boots. He wears sword and dagger in belts which gird his waist. The *signum* is decorated with (beginning from the top) a wreath, cross-bar with pendants, metal disc, the eagle of Jupiter standing on a thunderbolt, crescent moon, etc.

TREATY OF ALLIANCE BETWEEN GERMAN TRIBES - - - 4

*From the column of Antoninus at Rome (about 165 A.D.).*

GERMAN WISE WOMEN - - - - - 25

*From the column of Marcus Aurelius at Rome (A.D. 174).*

ROMANS ATTACKING A GERMAN FORTRESS - - - 30

*From the column of Marcus Aurelius (A.D. 174).*

This represents an attack on a German fortress, the wall of which seems to be made of wattles. The Romans approach *testudine facta*, i.e. placing their shields close together and overlapping so that missiles glide off, as they would off the back of a tortoise. Torches, swords, a pot full of molten metal, stones, spears, etc., are the missiles used by the defenders.

STORMING A BESIEGED CITY - - - - - 33

BATTERING RAM - - - - - 34

GERMAN CAVALRY AND ROMAN INFANTRY - - - 41

*From the column of Antoninus (A.D. 165).*

A GERMAN 'SUFFODIT' A ROMAN CAVALRY HORSE - 47

*From a tombstone.*

DESTROYING A GERMAN VILLAGE - - - - - 52

*From the column of Antoninus.*

IMAGINARY PLAN TO ILLUSTRATE FIGHT WITH ARIOVISTUS 94

MAP TO ILLUSTRATE CAESAR'S CAMPAIGNS - *End of book*

# INTRODUCTION

## SKETCH OF CAESAR'S LIFE

AT the beginning of the last century before the Christian era, the ancient republic of Rome was breaking up. The old government of the senate (*i.e.* the aristocracy), and of the annually elected officials, whose past members made it up, a government sufficient for a small city in its relations with the country round, was proving itself unable to cope with such problems as 'how to deal with Sicily and North Italy, with Greece and Spain, with Northern Africa and Southern France.' These territories during a period of about two centuries had gradually come under Roman sway. Man after man came to the front as reformer or as conqueror, to meet with ruin or assassination. The time was ripe for one who was to be both reformer *and* conqueror. That man was Julius Caesar. Born about B.C. 100, with a mother, Aurelia, who was a splendid example of the best type of Roman aristocratic matron, with the great soldier Marius, the hero of the democracy, as uncle by marriage, and at the very time when that

uncle was winning his great victories over those terrible German hordes, the Cimbri and the Teutons, he had, both by birth and bringing up, the best possible opportunity for taking the lead either of the aristocratic or of the democratic party in the state.

His tutor was a Gaul, his uncle conqueror of the Germans. He has every characteristic which should make him a hero. If, say, R. L. Stevenson had written the story of Caesar's life, what a story it would be! How he won the 'Victoria Cross,' *i.e.* the 'civic crown' in his first military service, in Asia Minor. How, on a second visit to Asia to study for 'the bar,' he was captured by pirates. How he tried to make the pirates appreciate his poetry and stories and, failing, and being ransomed, went back and hung the lot! Such would be some of the stories of his earlier life. The next chapter would perhaps narrate, if the story be true, the turning point of that life, after the beginning of his official career as a 'quaestor' in Spain. How at Gades (Cadiz), seeing a statue of the great Alexander, he reflected that at *his* age (thirty-three) Alexander had conquered the world, while he himself had lived a life of indolence; making then and there the resolve to do something worthy of his powers. Then his return to Rome; his friendship with the great general Pompeius; his extravagance as 'aedile,' producing gladiatorial shows on a scale unheard of before; his praetorship



with its campaigns against the wild hill tribes of Spain, a splendid preparation for the later victories over Gauls and Germans; his consulship, B.C. 59; his definite championship of the popular party, trying to remedy the abuses of his age. Hindered in every way by the senate and aristocracy, he goes on with his reforms, giving land to retired soldiers—who were now of necessity a professional class—and taking powers from the effete and corrupt senate. With the help of Pompeius (who had married Caesar's daughter), he gets appointed to the governorship, for five years, of Gaul: that means the north of Italy or Cisalpine Gaul, Illyricum (across the Adriatic) and the 'Province' of Gaul, *i.e.* the south-east corner of France. A great man was truly needed. The Helvetii in Switzerland, harassed by the Germans to the north and east, were threatening the Roman province. In a brilliant campaign, the Helvetii were crushed and killed, or sent back to their homes. Here our book takes up the story mainly in his own words. The rest of Caesar's life I leave to my readers to find out elsewhere. What is meant by the 'crossing of the Rubicon,' the Civil War, the friend Pompeius now the foe and rival, the campaigns in Spain and Greece and Egypt, the saving of the precious 'note books' by swimming, the 'dictatorship' for life, the reforms at Rome, the jealousy of enemies—aye, and of friends—the fatal Ides of March, B.C. 44—the

day which killed a 'king' and made an empire—with all this we are not now concerned.

A general who will rush into the ranks and seize a shield from a trembling soldier, rallying his men to victory out of defeat, who will sleep on the ground with his men, sharing all their hardships; who can, by one short speech, without a suggestion of punishment, turn a shrinking and mutinous army into a band of heroes; whose military writings inspired Napoleon by their strategy and charmed Cicero by their style, deserves a better fate than the contempt or wearisome toleration often shown for a Latin 'author.' Try then to see in this book a human document. It is the story of a great man, written by himself, a man who had consummate abilities and great faults, a Clive and a Warren Hastings, a Chatham and a Lloyd George, a Napoleon and a Wellington rolled into one. And here is how he treated the Germans, making in the intervals two invasions of Britain, and how the Germans treated him, in the years 58 to 54 B.C. (See *Caesar* (Warde Fowler), 'Heroes of the Nations,' or *Caesar*, J. A. Froude.)

## THE GERMANS

The historian Tacitus, writing some 150 years after Caesar, thus sums up the Roman dealings with the Germans. Speaking of the Cimbri, who

then lived in the Denmark peninsula 'nearest to the ocean,' he says: 'Now a small state but of great renown. Of their ancient glory many traces still remain. It was in the 640th year of her existence that Rome first heard of the Cimbri, in the consulship of Caecilius Metellus and Papirius Carbo (B.C. 113). From this date to the second consulship of the Emperor Trajan (A.D. 98) is about 210 years. So long have we been in our efforts to conquer Germany (*tamdiu Germania vincitur*). During this long period many losses have been received on both sides. Neither Samnite, nor Carthaginian, neither Spaniard nor Gaul, nor even the Parthian have given us more frequent warnings. In very truth, the independence of the Germans is fiercer than the despotism of an Arsaces.<sup>1</sup> The Germans by routing or taking prisoners Carbo and Cassius (113 B.C.), Scaurus Aurelius (108), Servilius Caepio and Marcus Manlius (105), deprived the Roman democracy of five consular armies, and robbed even a Caesar of Varus and his three legions (A.D. 7). Not without great loss to us were they beaten by Marius in Italy, the great Julius in Gaul, by Drusus, Nero and Germanicus in their own country. Soon afterwards the mighty threats of Caius Caesar were turned into ridicule. Then came a pause, until during our discords and civil war,<sup>2</sup> they

<sup>1</sup> A Parthian king.

<sup>2</sup> *i.e.* the wars of Galba, Otho, Vitellius, and Vespasian.

took by storm the winter camp of our legions, and even aimed at the conquest of our Gallic provinces. Once again they were driven back, and in recent times we have celebrated triumphs over them rather than defeated them ' (*Germania*, ch. 37).

Of the destruction of these Cimbri and Teutons by Marius, the great German historian Mommsen writes: 'The human avalanche, which for thirteen years had alarmed the nations from the Danube to the Ebro, from the Seine to the Po, rested beneath the sod or toiled under the yoke of slavery. The forlorn hope of the German migrations had performed its duty (query: 'carried out its destiny' ?); the homeless people of the Cimbri and their comrades were no more.'

We thus see that the Germans were regarded as Rome's most formidable foe. In Caesar's time their victories, and their final defeat by Marius, were still fresh in men's minds, and yet when Ariovistus and his Suebi crossed the Rhine, occupying part of the territories of the Roman allies, the Aedui, Rome did nothing. Indeed, it was considered advisable by Caesar himself, during his consulship (59 B.C.), to get the German king proclaimed 'amicus populi Romani' by the Senate. Caesar was evidently watching Ariovistus, as Ariovistus was watching Caesar (see ch. 44). The next year, 58 B.C., events swiftly reached a climax, as the story itself will tell us.

The Germans were represented by Caesar as a

vigorous race, in contrast to the degenerate and decadent Gauls (see p. 57); and it is interesting to compare his, and Tacitus', accounts of them with what we know at the present day. When we do this, we have to remember that we ourselves (so far as we are of Anglo-Saxon blood) are part of the Germanic race; but the militarism which was the most prominent characteristic of the ancient Germans has been lost in England owing to our 'insularity'. It was so strong, in Tacitus's opinion, that he says: 'Nor are they as easily persuaded to plough the earth and wait for the year's produce as to challenge the enemy and earn the honour of wounds. Nay, they actually think it tame and stupid to acquire by the sweat of toil what they might win by their blood' (*Germania*, ch. 14). Tacitus, on the whole, contrasts the Germans with the Romans to the disadvantage of the latter. He constantly praises German strength, courage, hardihood, manliness, and purity of life; so that his opinions may be regarded as those of an impartial observer. One of the great characteristics of the Germans has always been a fondness for 'loot,' so that in one passage, giving an account of a German revolt against Rome, in which they were assisted by Batavi (Holland) and Gauls, Tacitus says: 'The three leaders, each at his post, animated the combatants; the Gauls they urged to fight for freedom, the Batavi for glory,

the Germans for plunder' (*Hist.* iv. 78). The desire for 'loot' is—happily—not a characteristic of the English descendants of these German races.

A curious aspect of German militarism, directly mentioned twice by Caesar, and alluded to in several places, is their desire to have a large tract of waste land around them. Their own historian, Mommsen, speaks of this as the 'barbarous strategy of the Germans.' The Suebi were the particular exponents of this practice, which so often caused the invasion of Gaul by the expelled tribes. It was these constant quarrels between the Germanic races that prevented them showing their strength as a whole until the present time, when they have been at last united under the domination of Prussia. Tacitus in this connection utters one of the most remarkable of his sentences. In one war, he says, 'more than 60,000 (of the Bructeri, a North German race) fell, not to Roman arms, but, which is far grander, to our delight and before our eyes. May these nations ever retain, if not a love of us, at least a hatred for each other, since, while the destinies of empire drive us on,<sup>1</sup> there is no boon which Fortune can give us greater than the discord of our foes' (*Germania*, ch. 33).

<sup>1</sup> There is a doubt here whether the word '*drive us on*' should be *urgentibus* or *vergentibus*. If the latter, it is a wonderful prediction by the author of the end of the empire, '*drive us to our doom.*'

One of the points which most struck Caesar was the liberty which the Germans, particularly the children, enjoyed. It is in the last forty years that the German races, as a whole, have lost this personal liberty, particularly liberty of thought. Since 1870 they have come under the domination of Prussia, which lost its liberty under 'Frederick the Great' in the eighteenth century. Just as Prussia has tried with success to dominate the German races of the present day, there was a dominant race in Germany in Caesar's time—the Suebi, so that in the text I have called them 'the Prussians of ancient times.' Notice particularly the words of the Usipetes (p. 44, l. 120): 'We yield to none but the Suebi, for whom not even the gods are a match; in the whole world there is no one else whom we cannot overcome.'

Of course, when we speak of freedom, we do not imply freedom from military service. That was a universal necessity in the races of Europe, but the Germans, particularly the Suebi, regarded warfare as an annual or permanent institution rather than as an occasional necessity.

Their freedom was then—in striking contrast to the present day—freedom from absolute rule, whether of kings, or chieftains, or priests. Kings were the exception in the German races, and the chiefs retained their authority by valour and example alone. Priests,

according to Caesar, were non-existent, but Tacitus speaks of them as 'alone having the power to reprove or imprison or even flog the people.' The freedom in which the children were allowed to grow up is in great contrast to education in Germany of the present day, where 'paternal' government is more thoroughly established than in any European country.

Tacitus gives a different account from Caesar of the German gods; but neither refers to them by the Teutonic names. Caesar speaks of Sun, Moon and Vulcan (fire), Tacitus also of Mercury, Mars and Hercules. Both writers mention their use of 'lots' and 'auguries' (see note on p. 24, l. 584), and the reverence in which the opinion of women was held.

Both writers give very similar accounts of the houses, habits and daily life of the Germans, some remarks on which will be found occasionally in the notes.

## THE ARMY

Most of the military terms used in this selection are explained in the notes, as they occur, and are in many cases made clear in the illustrations. The *legio*, containing infantry only, numbered nominally 6000, made up of ten *cohortes* of 600 each, these being subdivided into three *manipuli*, and each *manipulus* into two centuries. The actual fighting strength





Slinger.

Light-armed soldier.

ROMAN SOLDIERS.

Soldiers of the legion.



ROMAN CENTURION.

*From a relief at Verona of Imperial date.*

of a legion, of course, varied owing to the length of service and casualties. The only figures supplied by Caesar give us an average of about 3000 on active service.

The regular officers of a legion were six *tribuni militum*, commanding in rotation, and sixty *centuriones*, i.e. one for each *centuria*. As a rule, however, Caesar put his legions under a *legatus*, i.e. one of his 'staff,' who acted as his personal 'representative.'

The most important of the centurions were those *primorum ordinum*. They seem to have formed a separate class from the rest, being regularly admitted to councils of war (see Part I., ch. 40). It is not known by what steps a centurion reached this (coveted) rank. The chief centurion in a legion, who led the 'first rank' (*primus pilus*), was called in consequence *primipilus*. The centurions were like our 'sergeant-majors,' experienced soldiers promoted from 'the ranks.' Their badge of office was a vinerod (*vitis*), not merely a 'swagger stick,' but an instrument of corporal punishment. A centurion of imperial times is mentioned by Tacitus as being nicknamed *cedo alteram*, 'give me another.'

The arrangement of cohorts (*quincunx* formation) is explained in note to p. 23, 557. It is not known how *deep* the formations were, or what were the intervals.

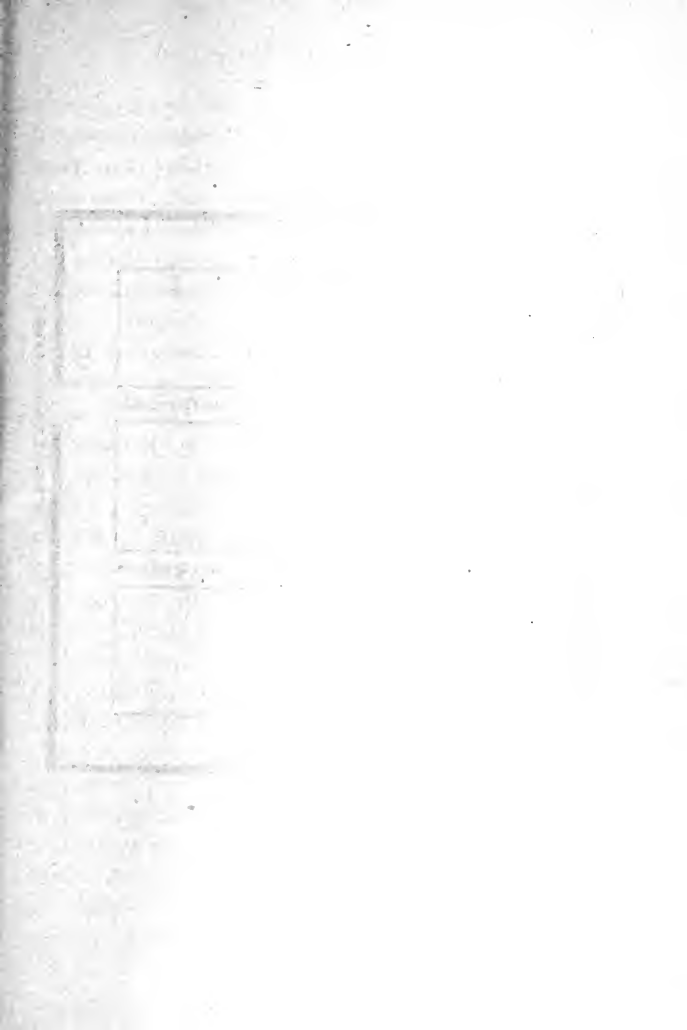
The arms of the *legionarius miles* were a short

sword, worn on right side, and one (or two) *pila*. A *pilum* was a javelin, six or seven feet long, with a 'neck' of soft iron, behind the hard point, so that it would bend in the enemy's shield (or person) and become useless. They were thrown once and then abandoned (see note to p. 26).

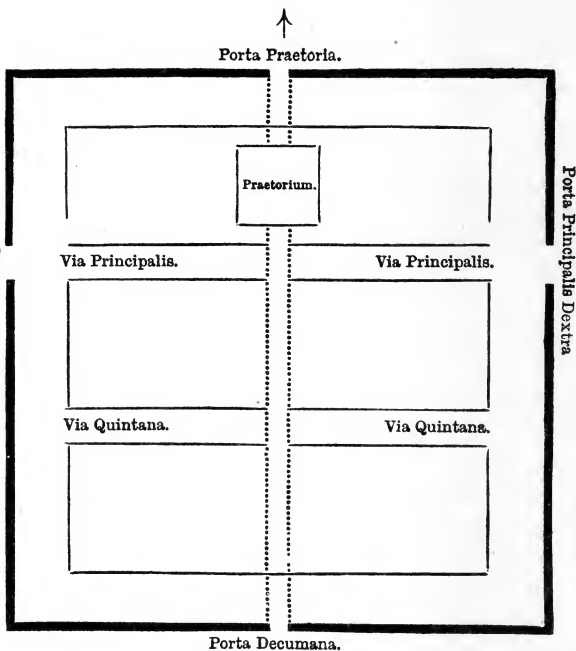
The defensive armour was a long shield (*scutum*), usually rectangular, made of wood and hides, and a leather cuirass (*lorica*), strengthened with bands of metal. The pictures, which are mostly of 'imperial' times, mostly show it as a coat of chain or scale armour. The soldiers possibly wore also greaves (*ocreae*), i.e. 'shinpads' of metal. They are never mentioned by Caesar, (as neither are the *loricae*), and are only shown in one of the pictures. Possibly their use was exceptional.

The cavalry were armed in the same way as the infantry, with spear, short sword and shield. They were usually levied from the subject races (see pp. 16 and 46), and were divided into *alae*, 'squadrons' of 300 to 400 men, and these into 'troops,' *turmae*. Their officers were *praefecti equitum*. The inferior officers, corresponding to the *centuriones*, apparently had no title (see p. 12, 260). There were also light-armed troops, archers, slingers, etc., called *alarii* (see note to p. 24). Their officers were also called *praefecti*.

In addition to his weapons and armour, the soldier had to carry on the march his 'pack,' (*sarcina*). This



Porta Principalis Sinistra



Porta Praetoria.

Praetorium.

Via Principalis.

Via Principalis.

Via Quintana.

Via Quintana.

Porta Decumana.

ROMAN CAMP.

Porta Principalis Dextra

was a bundle containing spare clothing, ' rations ' for several days (up to twenty), cooking utensils and tools, saw, spade and hatchet. It seems improbable that every man carried all these things. Possibly there was a division of labour. The pack was carried on a pole, invented by Marius, which caused the soldier to be nicknamed *mulus Marianus*, i.e. ' Marius' mule.' The baggage of the army, tents, etc., was called *impedimenta*, and carried by mules or horses, or in waggons. The tents were made of hides, but when the army went into winter quarters, huts were built, usually of wood.

The camp was square or rectangular (see illustration). It is useful to remember this when visiting so-called ' Roman camps.' If they are round or irregular, though they may have been used—temporarily—by Romans, they were not constructed by them. The Romans also preferred their camps in valleys. The camp was protected by ditch, rampart and palisade of stakes (*vallum*).

Considering the large part played by food and talk about food in relation to our modern armies, it is curious to notice how little mention of food there is in Caesar. He tells us much more about that of the Gauls and the Germans. Of course, he refers often enough to *res frumentaria* and *commeatus* (' supplies ' generally), but the meals, and food from the soldier's point of view, are scarcely touched upon. The food

is said to have consisted of 'corn' only, which seems a poor diet; but one reads of Scotchmen content with a bag of oatmeal as food for some days or even weeks.

The artillery, of which there are some illustrations, consisted of cumbrous machines for hurling stones or heavy darts. They seem to have been constructed on the 'spring' principle by means of twisted ropes.

The construction of bridges, towers and other works was the work of the ordinary soldiers under command of a *praefectus fabrum*, i.e. officer of the 'workmen' or 'engineers.'

Each legion had as standard an 'eagle,' carried by a centurion, *aquilifer*; while the cohort had a *signum* in the shape of a pole ornamented with metal discs and other devices. There was another standard (*vexillum*), a small red flag, for cavalry and detached bodies of troops.





ROMAN STANDARD-BEARER.

*From a grave-stone at Bonn, of the first century A.D.*



## HINTS ON TRANSLATION

I WISH to advocate a method of translation, not in the least original, but differing considerably from that recommended in most elementary textbooks.

My reasons for departing from the usual method are as follows. Trying to make out the sentence by first worrying for the main verb and its subject is something like the equally time-honoured method of catching a sparrow by putting salt on its tail.

- (1) It takes no notice of the Latin order.
- (2) It treats the ' main ' verb as intrinsically different from other verbs in the sentence. The main verb is only different when the others are subordinate to it in sense, not in time.
- (3) It tends to prevent the logical sequence of the Latin sentence being grasped.
- (4) It often makes a difficult puzzle out of a sentence (or group of sentences) quite easy in itself, but in which main verbs and subjects are either non-existent or very inconspicuous items.

I will give a few instances of the difficulties into which learners are led by this—to my mind—unnatural and arbitrary method of dealing with sentences.

## I. ch. 33 :

*Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire, et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, populo Romano periculosum videbat.*

Here it is easy enough to find the verb *videbat*, because there is only one. Let us see what happens when found.

*Videbat*, 'He saw'—what next?—*Germanos consuescere*, 'that the Germans were accustomed,' obviously an acc. and infin.—'to cross the Rhine'—we seem to be getting on swimmingly—'and to come (or be coming) into Gaul, a great number of them'—now we have two accs. and infins. : 'He saw that the Germans were crossing the Rhine, and a great number of them coming into Gaul'—then how are we to get on? We get stuck at *populo ... periculosum*.

Now by proceeding by another method which is :

1. 'Take the words as they come, unless you can't' (parsing them, of course, as far as possible). 'Now gradually the Germans to be getting accustomed to cross the Rhine, and into Gaul' (prepositional phrases belong to the verb, so postpone that phrase), 'a great number of them to be coming into Gaul,' 'the Roman people'—dat. or abl., leave it—'a dangerous thing he saw,' i.e. *he saw (to be) a dangerous thing for the Roman people*. You soon learn that prepositional phrases have to be just looked at and then 'hung up' till you get the verb with which they are connected, and the same with other adverbial phrases which don't make sense as they stand.

Also with regard to accusatives, when you come to an acc. and it is not an expression of place or time, say, 'Hullo ! here's the object (probably) or the beginning

of an acc. and infin.' ; leave it for the moment, and go on, going back to it when you find the verb which is likely to govern it.

2. Notice the *warning* words: *cum*, *postquam*, *ut*, *ne*, *si*, *quod*, etc., which mark and generally begin *clauses*—bracket off the clause in mind or with pencil. Try if it makes sense as it stands ; if not, hang it up till wanted. Other kinds of *warning* words are: *tantus*, *tam*, etc. ; *neque*, *simul*, *eodem tempore*, showing that two things are to be mentioned.

3. Translate participles literally, at first. If nom., of course they agree with the subject. They act as verbs, and each verb *usually* comes at the end of its own clause, i.e. its own lot of words.

Now try another sentence, I. ch. 48 :

*Si quo erat longius prodeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut júbis equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent.*

Try the usual method. Where's the main verb ? You get into the habit of looking for it at the end, so the careless boy will probably say, 'they equalled.' Let us treat him, however, as a careful person. He will then see that *adaequarent* is subj., so he will hark back and find *erat*—what is the subject ? Why *celeritas*. Now then—'The swiftness was'—*tanta*, 'so great'—by the practice of these—that they equalled the course—or speed—what speed ?—why, 'of the horses, being lifted up on (or by) the manes.' Hullo ! we've left out the beginning—'if they had to go any further,' etc.—he will find this in the notes. He may revise this and make sense, but he generally doesn't.

The 'if' clause makes nonsense unless it comes first. Now if we take the thing as it comes, we must remember that 'revising' is often necessary, and as we are accustomed to 'hanging up' certain parts of the sentence, this revising becomes a habit.

Try it, therefore, in the other way. '*If in any direction there was need to advance further,*' aut '*or—more quickly to retreat,*' i.e. *to retreat more quickly*, '*so great was*'—what?—why something fem. sing., and seeing *tanta* we ought to look out for *ut*—'*these men's speed*' *exercitatione* '*by practice*' *that*—*jubis*—a dat. or abl. '*manes of the horses*' leave it—*sublevati*—nom. plur.—'*they being raised or helped*'—here we are—'*being raised or helped by the manes of the horses*'—*cursum* acc. object—*adaequarent*, '*they equalled the speed*'—what *speed*? Why that of the horses just mentioned. On revision we find very little to revise; everything falls into its place naturally.

Now take a bit of narrative of a more complicated and concentrated kind—a typical Latin story.

Part III. (*B.G.* iv.), ch. 12:

*Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit, ipse equo vulnerato dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit; cum circumventus, multis vulneribus acceptis, cecidisset, atque id frater, qui jam proelio excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo, se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.*

Old method: first 'sentence,' ending *restitit*. Main verb, *restitit*—subject, *hic*. '*This man resisted very bravely, when he was bringing help to his brother shut in by the enemy, he dragged that man out of danger, he himself having been thrown from his wounded horse*'—*quoad*

*potuit*, 'as far as he could !' Second 'sentence'—Main verb, *interfectus est*—subject, *frater*. 'The brother was killed, when having been surrounded, having received many wounds' (the thought is being shortened somewhat) he had fallen, and 'that brother'—no, that won't do—'the brother noticed that from afar, who had gone out of the battle, his horse having been spurred on, he offered himself to the enemy and was killed' (over again !).

Now it seems to me impossible for anyone but a logical genius to make out such a narrative by the process of worrying after the main verb and subject. You don't know who is being spoken of, or how many people there are in the story. Now let us try the other method, which takes it for granted that the events are related in the order in which they happened, and that the subject remains the same until it is changed.

'This man' (*cum* + subj. is generally to be translated by a participial phrase)—look for verb with *cum* at once, as the next word has to be 'hung up'—'bringing help to his brother (who was) cut off by the enemy'—*illum*, object, go on to verb, 'snatched him out of danger' (now we know there are two men, the 'subject' and his brother). 'He himself, his horse being wounded, being thrown'—*quoad potuit*, an adverbial phrase, take it with the following verb, as it does not make sense here—'resisted as long as he could'; *cum*, 'when, having been surrounded'—still the same subject; the original 'hic'—'and having received many wounds' (see note on p. 49, l. 237) 'he had fallen, and—that thing'—postpone it—'his brother who had now gone out of the battle had noticed'—*id*—'the fact—putting spurs to his horse'—*se*, object—take the

verb—‘*he offered (i.e. exposed) himself to the enemy and was killed.*’ We see that every word or phrase thus presents a picture of the things happening in their correct order, *e.g.* a participle, as *circumventus*, expresses a ‘main’ fact just as much as does the ‘main’ verb. If, for instance, Caesar had wanted to do so, he could have made *se obtulit atque* into ‘*cum se obtulisset,*’ making an additional temptation to put the cart before the horse. Let us keep cart and horse in their right places, and take the phrases as they come, unless we can’t. Try this sentence in another way, leaving out connecting links, and see how every verbal statement, whether as verb, participle or clause, fits into its place, in the method of a well-known recitation :

‘ Boy—gun—  
 Shoot—fun !—  
 Gun—bust—  
 Boy—dust ! ’

‘ Man—brother cut off—helps—rescues—self—horse wounded—thrown—resists—is surrounded—gets many wounds—falls. Brother—out of fight—sees—gallops horse—dashes into enemy—gets killed.’

Here is the whole piece produced as it might be by a careful boy who has endeavoured to carry out the usual rules :

‘ This man rescued that man when he was helping his brother (who was) cut off by the enemy, he himself resisted as long as he could after his horse had been wounded, he having been thrown ; and his brother offered himself to the enemy and was killed, when he had fallen after having been surrounded and having received many wounds, and who had gone out of the battle (when) he had noticed it from afar, having spurred on his horse.’



## PART I.

### CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS

ADAPTED FROM CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, BOOK I.

58 B.C.

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto,\* totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum \* convenerunt. A petition to Caesar from nearly all Gaul. 'Petimus,' inquiunt, 'ut nobis liceat concilium totius Galliae indicere, idque tuā voluntate facere. Quasdam 5 res habemus, quas, ex communi consensu, a te petere volumus.'

Ea re permissā,\* diem concilio constituerunt, et iurejurando, ne quis enuntiaret, inter se \* sanxerunt.

31. Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes civitatum, 10 qui ante fuerant,\* ad Caesarem reverterunt.\*

Petierunt ut sibi secreto de suā omniumque\* salute cum eo agere liceret.

Ea re impetratā, sese omnes flentes Caesari\* ad pedes projecerunt: et pro his Divitiacus The same chiefs come again; Divitiacus, a chief of the Aedui, acts as spokesman. 15 Aeduus locutus est. 'Hoc contendimus et laboramus, ne ea, quae dicta erunt,\* enuntientur: nam, si enuntiatum erit,\* summum in cruciatum nos venturos \* videmus.

- 20 Galliae totius \* factiones sunt duae : harum alterius principatum tenent Aedui, alterius Arverni.

Hi tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contendebant, ut ab Arvernibus Sequanis German aid called in. que Germani mercede \* arcesserentur.

- 25 Horum primo circiter millia quindecim Rhenum transierunt.

Postquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamaverunt, plures traducti sunt.

- 30 Nunc sunt in Galliâ ad C et XX milium numerum.

Cum his Aedui clientes\*que eorum semel atque iterum armis contenderunt : magnam calamitatem pulsati acceperunt : omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amiserunt.

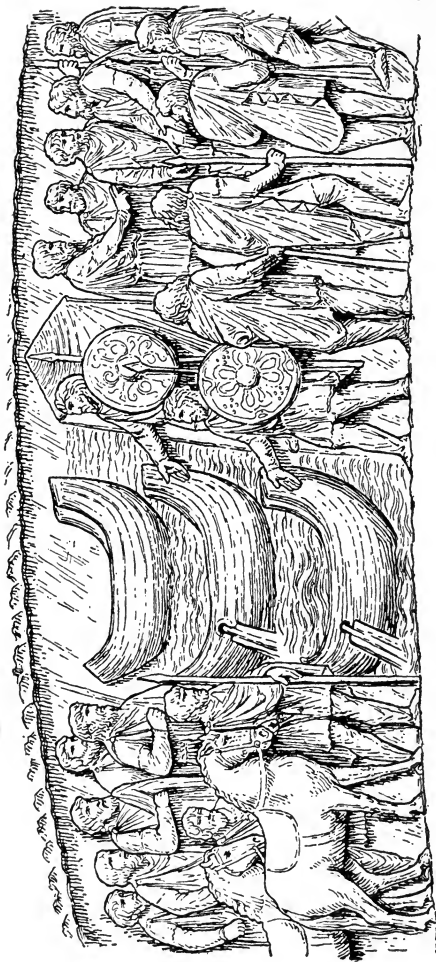
- 35 His proeliis calamitatibusque fracti, coacti sunt Sequanis obsides dare, nobilissimos civitatis : et jurejurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros \* neque auxilium a populo Romano imploratu-  
 Terrible results to the Gauls.

- 40 Unus ego sum ex omni civitate Aeduorum qui adduci non potui ut jurarem aut liberos meos obsides darem.

- Ob eam rem ex civitate profugi, et Romam\* ad senatum veni, auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque  
 45 jurejurando neque obsidibus tenebar.

Sed pejus victoribus Sequanis quam Aeduis victis accidit.





TREATY OF ALLIANCE BETWEEN GERMAN TRIBES.

(Notice the difference in dress from that described by Caesar on page 39.)

*From the column of Antoninus at Rome (about 165 A.D.).*

Ariovistus enim, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus  
 consedit, tertiamque partem agri Epecially for the  
 tribe who had first  
 asked German aid. Sequani, qui est optimus totius 50  
 Galliae, occupavit.

Nunc etiam de alterā parte tertiā Sequanos dece-  
 dere jubet, propterea quod his paucis mensibus  
 Harudum milia hominum viginti quattuor ad eum  
 venerunt. His locus et sedes parandi sunt.\* 55

Paucis annis omnes ex Galliae finibus pellentur,  
 atque omnes Germani Rhenum transibunt; neque  
 enim conferendus est Gallicus\* cum Germanorum agro,  
 neque haec victus consuetudo cum illā comparanda.

Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio 60  
 vicit, superbe et crudeliter imperat,\* obsidesque  
 nobilissimi ejusque\* liberos poscit.

In eos etiam omnia exempla cruciatus edit, si qua  
 res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem ejus facta erit.

Homo est barbarus, iracundus, temerarius: non 65  
 possunt ejus imperia diutius sustineri.

Nisi si quid in Caesare populoque Ariovistus' charac-  
 ter. Romano auxilii,\* omnibus Gallis idem est faciendum  
 quod Helvetii fecerunt.

Domo emigrabunt, aliud domicilium, alias sedes 70  
 remotas a Germanis petent, fortunamque, quaecun-  
 que accidet, experientur.

Haec si enuntiata erunt Ariovisto, non dubitamus  
 quin\* de omnibus obsidibus gravissimum supplicium  
 sumat.

Caesar vel auctoritate suā atque exercitus,\* vel

What Caesar can do nomine populi Romani deterrere po-  
for Gaul. test, ne major multitudo Germanorum

Rhenum traducatur ;

80 Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuriā potest defendere.'

32. Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habitā,\* omnes, qui aderant, magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt.

85 Animadvertit Caesar unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere quas ceteri facerent,\* sed tristes capite demisso terram intueri.

Ejus rei quae causa esset miratus, ex ipsis quae-

Representatives of sivit. Nihil Sequani respondere,\*  
90 one tribe, cowed by sed in eâdem tristitiâ taciti perma-  
Ariovistus, refuse to nere.  
speak.

Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset,\* idem \* Divitiacus Aeduus respondit: 'Hoc est miserior et gravior fortuna

95 Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri audent, neque auxilium implorare.

Absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adsit, horrent ; propterea\* quod reliquis tamen fugae  
100 facultas datur ;

Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum receperunt, quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus sunt, omnes cruciatus erunt perferendi.

33. His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem 105 curae\* futuram :

*Magnam se habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum, Ariovistum finem injuriis fac-*  
*turum.*

Caesar reassures  
them, and promises  
to take up their case.  
His reasons for doing 110  
so.

Hac oratione habitâ concilium di-  
misit.

Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem suscipiendam\* putaret.

In primis Aeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepe a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in dicione 115 videbat Germanorum teneri ;

Obsides quoque eorum esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat, quod in tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum sibi et reipublicae esse arbitrabatur.

120

Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere\* Rhenum transire, et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, populo Romano periculosum videbat ;

neque existimabat homines feros ac barbaros sibi temperaturos,\* quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, 125 in provinciam exirent, atque inde in Italiam contenderent.

(Hoc ante Cimbri Teutonique fecerant et a Mario omnino erant fusi.)

His rebus quam maturrime\* occurrendum putabat. 130

Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos spiritus, tantam  
 arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus  
 non videretur.

Ariovistus the abso-  
 lute 'limit.'

- 135 **34.** Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos  
 mitteret qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum  
 medium utriusque \* colloquio deligeret.

*Velle sese de republica et summis utriusque rebus cum  
 eo agere.*

- 140 Caesar's message to  
 Ariovistus and the  
 reply of the latter. Ei legationi Ariovistus haec re-  
 spondit :

'Si quid mihi a te opus esset, ego ad te venissem :  
 si quid tu me \* vis, te ad me venire oportet.

- Praeterea ego neque sine exercitu in eas partes  
 145 Galliae venire audeo, quas tu possides, neque exercitum  
 sine magno comaeatu atque molimento in unum locum  
 contrahere possum.

- Mihi autem mirum videtur quid \* in Galliā, quam  
 bello vici, aut tibi aut omnino populo  
 Romano negotii sit.'

What business have  
 you here?

- 35.** His responsis ad Caesarem relatis iterum ad  
 eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit.

'Magno meo populiue Romani beneficio affectus  
 es, in consulatu meo rex atque amicus  
 a senatu appellatus.

Caesar's reply. Three  
 demands and a warn-  
 ing.

155

Hanc tamen gratiam mihi populoque Romano refers,  
 ut in colloquium venire invitatus graveris,\* neque de  
 communi re dicendum et cognoscendum putes.

Haec sunt, igitur, quae a te postulo :



primum ne quam multitudinem hominum amplius 160  
trans Rhenum in Galliam traducas ;

deinde obsides, quos habes ab Aeduis, reddas ;  
Sequanisque permittas ut, quos illi habent, tuā volun-  
tate reddere illis liceat ; neve Aeduos injuriā lacessas  
neve his sociisque eorum bellum inferas.\* 165

Si haec ita feceris, mihi populoque Romano gratia  
atque amicitia perpetua tecum erit :

Si non impetravero, ego, ex\* senatus consulto, quo  
Aedui ceterique amici populi Romani defendendi  
sunt, Aeduum injurias non neglecturus sum.\* 170

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit :

‘Ius est belli, ut qui vicerint, iis quos vicerint,  
quemadmodum velint, imperent :

Item populus Romanus victis non ad alterius  
praescriptum sed ad suum arbitrium Ariovistus’ answer  
ending with true  
German braggado-  
cio. 175  
imperare consuevit.

Si ego populo Romano non prae-  
scribo, quemadmodum suo jure utatur, non oportet  
me a populo Romano in meo jure impediri.

Aedui mihi, quoniam belli fortunam temptarunt,\* 180  
armis congressi ac superati, stipendiarii facti sunt.

Magnam tu injuriam facis, qui tuo adventu vecti-  
galia mihi deteriora facias.\*

Aeduis obsides redditurus non sum : neque iis  
neque eorum sociis injuriā bellum illaturus, si in eo 185  
manebunt, quod convenit,\* stipendiumque quotannis  
pendent.

Si id non fecerint, longe iis fraternum nomen \* populi  
Romani aberit.

190 Quod \* tu mihi denuntias, te Aeduorum injurias  
non neglecturum, nemo mecum sine suâ pernicie  
contendit.

Cum \* voles, congregitor ; intelliges quid in-  
victi Germani, exercitatisimi in armis, qui inter  
195 annos quattuordecim tectum non subierunt, virtute  
possint.'

37. Haec eodem tempore \* Caesari mandata  
referebantur, et legati ab Aeduis et a Treveris  
veniebant :

200 Aedui questum, quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam  
transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur.

*Sese (dixerunt) ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti  
redimere potuisse.*

Treveri autem, *pagos \* centum Sueborum ad ripas*  
205 *Rheni consedissee, qui Rhenum transire*  
*conarentur.*  
Hearing of more  
Germans coming  
Caesar determines  
to move at once.

Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer  
commotus maturandum sibi existimavit.

Verebatur ne, si nova manus Sueborum cum veteri-  
210 bus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset, minus facile  
resisti \* posset.

Itaque re frumentariâ quam celerrime comparatâ  
magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum tridui \* viam processisset, nuntiatum est  
215 ei, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum \*

Vesontionem contendere, triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse.

Id ne \* accideret, magno opere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat.

Namque Vesontio est oppidum maximum Sequa- 220  
norum, omniumque rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant,  
summa erat in eo oppido facultas.

Praeterea naturā loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam  
ad ducendum bellum \* daret facultatem.

Flumen Dubis, ut circino circumductum, paene 225  
totum oppidum cingit.

Reliquum spatium, quod est non  
amplius \* pedum MDC, qua flumen  
intermittit, mons continet magnā altitudine ita, ut  
radices montis ex utrāque parte ripae fluminis 230  
contingant.

Caesar, by forced  
marches, occupies  
Vesontio (Besançon)  
before Ariovistus.

Hunc \* murus circumdatus arcem efficit, et cum  
oppido conjungit.

Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus  
contendit occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium collocat. 235

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumen-  
tariae commeatusque causā moratur, subito tantus  
timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter  
omnium mentes animosque perturbaret.

Hic ex percontatione nostrorum et vocibus Gallorum 240  
ortus est ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine \*  
corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exerci-  
tatione in armis esse praedicabant.

Primum a tribunis militum \* ortus est, praefectis  
 245 Panic in Roman army due to rumours of German size and 'valour.' reliquisque, qui, ex urbe \* amicitiae  
 causā Caesarem secuti, non magnum  
 in re militari usum habebant.

Horum alius aliā \* causā illatā, quam sibi ad proficis-  
 cendum necessariam esse diceret,\* petebat ut ejus  
 250 voluntate discedere liceret.

Nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem  
 vitarent, remanebant.

Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas  
 tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis, aut suum  
 255 fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis com-  
 mune periculum miserabantur.

Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur.

Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii, qui  
 magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurio-  
 260 nesque, quique \* equitatui praeerant, perturbabantur.

Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant,  
 non se hostem, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem  
 silvarum timere dicebant;

Alii rem frumentariam,\* ut satis commode sup-  
 265 portari posset.

Nonnulli etiam Caesari renuntiaverant, cum castra  
 moveri ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes\*  
 milites, neque propter timorem signa laturos.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato con-  
 270 silio,\* omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis  
 centurionibus, vehementer eos incusavit.

‘Cur vobis,’ inquit, ‘quaerendum aut cogitandum esse putatis, aut quam in partem aut quo Caesar rebukes the officers sternly, but reasons with them. consilio ducamini? \* Ariovistus, \* me consule, cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetiit. 275

Cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicet? \*

Mihi quidem persuadetur, \* cognitis meis postulatis, atque aequitate condicionum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. 280

Quod \* si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem veremini?

Aut cur de vestra virtute aut de mea diligentia desperatis? Factum est ejus hostis periculum, \* patrum nostrorum memoria, cum, Cimbris et Teutonis a Caio 285 Mario pulsus, non minorem laudem exercitus, quam ipse imperator, meritus videbatur. Factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu; \* nam quos \* aliquamdiu inermos sine causa timueratis, postea armatos ac victores superastis. \* 290

Denique hi iidem sunt quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non solum in suis sed etiam in illorum finibus plerumque superarunt.

Helvetii tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerunt. Si quos adversum proelium \* et fuga 295 Gallorum commovet, hi, si quaerent, hoc reperire poterunt:

Diuturnitate belli defatigatis Gallis, Ariovistus, cum multos menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset,

300 neque sui potestatem \* fecisset, desperantes jam de pugna et dispersos subito adortus,\* magis ratione et consilio quam virtute vicit. Hac ratione ne ipse quidem sperat nostros exercitus capi posse.

Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem  
305 angustiasque itineris conferunt, faciunt arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperant \* aut praescribere videntur.

Haec mihi curae sunt ; frumentum Sequani, Leuci, Lingones subministrant, jamque in agris frumenta  
310 matura : de itinere ipsi brevi tempore judicabitis.

Quod \* non fore dicto audientes milites neque signa laturi dicuntur, nihil eā re commoveor.

Scio enim quibuscunque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gestā fortunam defuisse, aut,  
315 aliquo facinore comperto, avaritiam esse convictam.\*

Meam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello perspexistis.

Itaque quod in longiorem diem collaturus \* fui, repraesentabo.\* Proximā nocte de quartā vigiliā castra  
320 movere constitui, ut quam primum intellegere possim, utrum apud vos pudor atque officium an timor valeat.

Quod si praeterea nemo sequetur,\* tamen ego

He will go with 10th  
legion alone if neces-  
sary.

cum solā decimā legione proficiscar,  
de quā non dubito, mihique ea

325 cohors praetoria \* erit.'

Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue, et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

41. Hac oratione habitā, mirum in modum \* conversae sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est. 330

Princeps decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset,\* seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit.

Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum \* centurionibus egerunt uti Caesari satisfacerent: *se neque unquam dubitasse, neque timuisse, neque de summā belli suum iudicium, sed imperatoris esse existimavisse.* 335

Result of this speech: gratitude of 10th legion, apologies from the rest.

Eorum satisfactione acceptā, et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem habebat, de quartā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est, 340

et circuitu milium amplius quinquaginta apertis locis \* exercitum duxit. Septimo die, cum iter non intermitteret,\* ab exploratoribus certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse. 345

Start of Roman army by a circuitous route.

42. Cognito Caesaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: *quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset; seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare.* 350

Non respuit condicionem Caesar; jamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti \* denegasset, ultro polliceretur; 355

Ariovistus now suggests a parley,

jamque magnam in spem veniebat, pro suis tantis populique Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulatis, fore ut pertinaciā desisteret.\*

Dies colloquio dictus est ex eo die quintus.

360 Interim saepe ultro citroque cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret :

*vereri se, ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur.\* uterque*

365 but is suspicious of treachery. *cum equitatu veniret.\* aliā ratione sese non esse venturum.*

Caesar neque colloquium interpositā causā tolli volebat, neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatui committere audebat ;

Itaque commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis

370 Caesar also suspicious. Gallis equitibus\* detractis, eo\* legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere. Praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset,\* habere voluit.

375 Quod cum fieret,\* non irridicule quidam ex militibus

A soldier's joke. *decimae legionis dixit : plus quam*

*pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere ; pollicitum se in cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum, ad equum rescribere.\**

380 43. Planities erat magna et in eā tumulus\* terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat.

Eo, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venerunt.



Legionem Caesar, quam equis devexerat, passibus\* ducentis ab eo tumultu constituit. Item equites 385 Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt.

Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit.

Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio orationis sua senatusque in eum beneficia comme- The meeting of 390  
moravit, *quod rex appellatus esset a Caesar and Ario-*  
*senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissime missa ;* vistus.

‘Haec res,’ inquit, ‘et paucis contigit et pro magnis hominum officiis consuevit tribui.

Tu, cum\* neque aditum neque causam postulandi 395 justam haberes, beneficio ac liberalitate meā ac senatus haec praemia es consecutus.

Veteres autem justaeque causae necessitudinis nobis cum Aeduis intercedunt, senatus consulta saepe- numero maximeque honorifica in eos sunt facta ; 400

Aedui omni tempore totius Galliae principatum tenuerunt, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetierunt:

Populi Romani haec est consuetudo, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratiā, 405 dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse :

Quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulerunt, id iis\* eripi quis pati possit?’

Postulavit deinde eadem, quae legatis in mandatis dederat, *ne aut Aeduis, aut eorum sociis* Caesar's demands. 410  
*bellum inferret ; obsides redderet ; si*

*nullam partem Germanorum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.*

44. Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca re-  
415 spondit; de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit:

‘Rhenum,’ inquit, ‘transii non meā sponte, sed  
Ariovistus’ reply. rogatus et arcessitus a Gallis; non  
sine magnā spe magnisque praemiis  
domum propinquosque reliqui.

420 Sedes habeo in Galliā ab ipsis concessas, obsides  
ipsorum voluntate \* datos.

Stipendium capio jure belli, quod victores victis  
imponere consuerunt: non ego Gallis sed Galli  
mihi bellum intulerunt; omnes Galliae civitates  
425 ad me oppugnandum venerunt, ac contra me castra  
habuerunt.

Eas omnes copias uno proelio pulsas superavi; si  
The Gauls pay tri- iterum experiri volunt, iterum para-  
bute and give hos- tus sum decertare; si pace uti volunt,  
tages for ‘love’!  
430 iniquum est de stipendio recusare, quod suā volun-  
tate\* ad hoc tempus pependerunt.

Amicitiam populi Romani mihi ornamento\* et  
praesidio, non detrimento, esse oportet, idque eā spe  
petieram.  
435 Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittetur,  
et dediticii subtrahentur, non minus libenter recusabo  
populi Romani amicitiam quam appetii.

Quod\* multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam tra-  
duco, hoc mei muniendi non Galliae impugnandae

causā facio; hujus rei testimonium est, quod nisi 440  
rogatus non veni, et quod bellum non intuli sed  
defendi.

Ego prius\* in Galliam veni quam populus Romanus.  
Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populi Romani  
Galliae provinciae finibus egressus est. 445

Quid tibi vis? \* Cur in meas possessiones venisti?  
Provincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra.

Ut mihi concedi non oporteat,\* si in vestros fines  
impetum faciam, sic item vos iniqui estis, quod in meo  
jure me interpellatis. 450

Quod fratres Aeduos appellatos dicis, non tam bar-  
barus ego sum neque tam imperitus rerum ut non  
sciam neque bello Allobrogum\* proximo Aeduos  
Romanis auxilium tulisse; neque Aeduos in his con-  
tentionibus, quas mecum et cum Sequanis habuerunt, 455  
auxilio populi Romani usos esse.

Debo suspicari, te simulatā amicitia, quem \*  
exercitum in Galliā habes, mei opprimendi causā  
habere.

Qui nisi decedes, atque exercitum deduces ex his 460  
regionibus, ego te non pro amico sed  
hoste habebo; A threat.

Quod si te interfecero, multis ego nobilibus princi-  
pibusque populi Romani gratum faciam;

Id ego ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum 465  
habeo,\* quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam tuā  
morte redimere potero.

Quod si discesseris et liberam possessionem mihi tradideris, magno ego te praemio remunero, et quaecunque bella geri

470 A bribe.

volam, sine ullo tuo\* labore et periculo conficiam.'

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quare negotio desistere non posset; *neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati, uti optime*  
 475 *merentes socios desereret: neque se judicare Galliā potius esse Ariovisti, quam populi Romani.*

*Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos\* ab Q. Fabio*

Caesar's reply. Roman generosity to conquered Gauls.

*Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovisset, neque in provinciam rede-gisset,*  
 480 *neque stipendium imposuisset.*

*Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romani justissimum esse in Galliā imperium: si judicium senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliā, quam bello victam suis\* legibus uti voluisset.*

485 46. Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari

Break up of the conference owing to German attack on Caesar's bodyguard.

nuntiatum est, equites Ariovisti propius tumultum accedere, et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conicere. Caesar loquendi finem fecit, seque ad suos  
 490 recepit, suisque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat. Nolebat, pulsus hostibus,\* dici posse, eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circum-  
 495 ventos.

Mox in vulgus militum elatum est, quā arrogantiam in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Galliā Romanis interdixisset,\* impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut diremisset.

Itaque multo major alacritas studiumque pugnandi 500 majus exercitui injectum est.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: *velle se de his rebus, quae inter* Renewed overtures from Ariovistus. *eos agi coeptae,\* neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret, 505 aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatum aliquem ad se mitteret.*

Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie ejus diei Germani retineri non potuerant, quin in nostros tela conicerent.\* 510

Legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris objecturum existimabat. Commodissimum Caesar foresees danger of treachery, but decides to send two envoys. visum est C. Valerium Procillum,\* summā virtute et humanitate adulescentem, cujus 515 pater a C. Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, ad eum mittere. Multā \* enim Ariovistus longinquā consuetudine hac linguā utebatur, neque in eo \* peccandi Germanis causa erat. Cum eo M. Metium 520 mittere visum est, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur.

His mandavit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad se referret.

Quos cum apud se in castris conspexisset, exercitu  
 525 Ariovistus' treach- ery to the envoys. suo praesente conclamavit: *Quid ad se venirent? An speculandi causā?* Conantes \* dicere prohibuit, et in catenas conjecit.

48. Eodem die castra promovit et milibus passuum  
 sex a Caesaris castris sub monte \* consedit. Postridie  
 530 ejus diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit,  
 et milibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit, eo  
 consilio, ut frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis  
 et Aeduis supportaretur, Caesarem intercluderet.  
 Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris  
 535 suas copias produxit, et aciem instructam habuit, ut,  
 si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas  
 non \* deesset.

Ariovistus his omnibus diebus \* exercitum castris  
 540 The Germans avoid all but cavalry skirmishes. continuit, equestri proelio cotidie contendit.

Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant.

Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numero pedites  
 velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copiā singuli  
 545 German method of fighting with cavalry and infantry combined. singulos suae salutis causā delegerant.  
 Cum his in proeliis versabantur,  
 ad eos se equites recipiebant: hi, si

quid erat durius, concurrebant, si qui,\* graviore  
 vulnere accepto, equo deciderat,\* circumsistebant:

si quo \* erat longius prodeundum aut celerius  
 550 recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas,  
 ut jubeis equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent.

49. Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur,\* ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, castris idoneum locum delegit.

555

Ad eum locum, qui circiter passus sexcentos ab Ariovisti castris aberat, acie triplici instructā,\* venit.

Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire iussit. Eo circiter ho- Caesar establishes another (smaller) camp. 560  
 minum numero XVI millia expedita  
 cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent.

Nihilo setius Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem 565  
 auxiliorum; quattuor reliquas in castra maiora reduxit.

50. Proximo die, instituto suo\* Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit, paulumque a majoribus castris progressus, aciem instruxit; hostibus pugnandi 570  
 potestatem fecit.

Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit.

Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, misit. Ariovistus avoids a regular battle. 575  
 Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum  
 pugnatum est.

Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus, in castra reduxit.

580 Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam.

Apud Germanos ea erat consuetudo, ut matres\*  
 familiae eorum sortibus\* et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium  
 585 The cause of this. committi ex usu\* esset necne:

Eas reperiebat ita dicere: *Non esse fas, Germanos superare si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.*

51. Postridie ejus diei Caesar praesidium utrisque  
 590 castris, quod satis esse visum est, reliquit;

omnes alarios\* in conspectu hostium pro castris  
 minoribus constituit, quod minus  
 605 Caesar forces the Germans to fight. multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur.

Ipse, triplici instructā acie,\* usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt, generatimque constituerunt paribus intervallis, Harudes,\* Marcomannos, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suebos.

Omnem aciem suam raedis et carris\* circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fugā relinqueretur.

Eo\* mulieres imposuerunt, quae, in proelium proficiscentes, passis manibus flentes  
 605 Place of women in the German army. implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.

52. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos\* et





GERMAN WISE WOMEN.

*From the column of Marcus Aurelius at Rome (A.D. 174).*

quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet.

610 Ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit.

Ita\* nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque pro-  
615 currerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes coniciendi\* non daretur.

Rejectis pilis, comminus gladiis pugnatum est: at  
Germani celeriter ex consuetudine suā,  
German massed for- phalange factā,\* impetus gladiatorum  
mation.

620 exceperunt.

Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent, et scuta manibus revellerent et desuper vulnerarent.

Cum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque  
625 in fugam conversa esset, a dextro  
Romans successful on right, hard pressed on left. cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant.

Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulescens, qui equitatui praeerat, quod expeditior\* erat, quam ii,  
630 qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

53. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum milia passuum ex eo loco  
635 circiter quinque pervenerunt.

Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi tranare contenderunt, aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem reppererunt. In his fuit

Complete defeat of the Germans.

Ariovistus, qui, naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus, eā profugit : reliquos omnes consecuti equitatu \* nostri 640 interfecerunt.

Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum duxerat,\* altera Norica, regis Voccionis soror, quam in Galliā duxerat a fratre missam : utraque in eā fugā periit.

Ariovistus escapes, abandoning his two wives.

645

Duae filiae harum, altera occisa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fugā trinis catenis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostes equitatu persequentem incidit.

650

Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem attulit: nam hominem honestissimum provinciae

The two envoys saved.

Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium sibi restitutum videbat ; neque ejus calamitate \* de tantā voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna deminuerat.

*Is se praesente \* de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus reservaretur : sortium beneficio se esse incolumem.*

660

Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato, Suebi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt ;

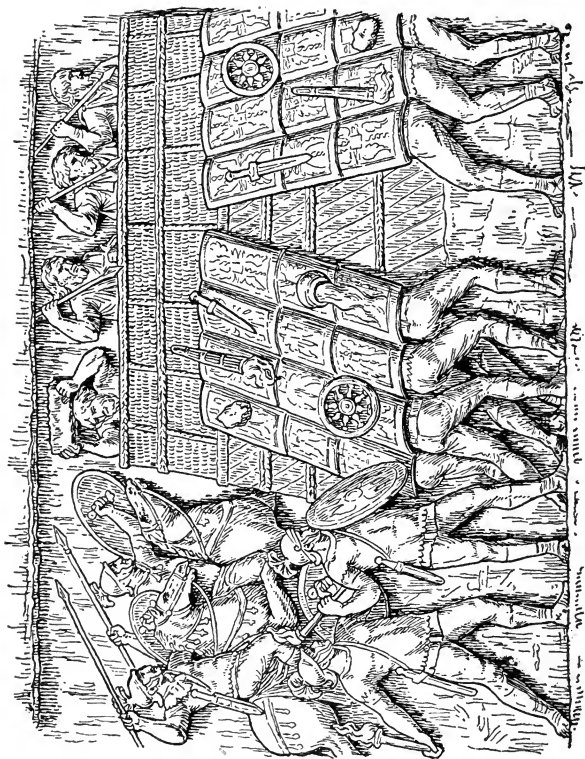
quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum \* incolunt, perterritos

665 Results of the battle: insecuti magnum ex his numerum  
the other Germans  
retire from the  
Rhine. occiderunt.

Caesar, unā aestate duobus maximis  
bellis confectis, maturius paulo \* quam tempus anni  
postulabat in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit ;

670 hibernis Labienum praeposuit ; ipse in citeriorem \*  
Galliam ad conventus \* agendos profectus est.





ROMANS ATTACKING A GERMAN FORTRESS.

(Notice the 'testudo' of shields.)

*From the column of Marcus Aurelius (A.D. 174).*

## PART II.

### THE TREACHERY OF THE ADUATUCI

FROM CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, BOOK II.

57 B.C.

(In the second campaign in Gaul, 57 B.C., Caesar, after defeating separately the Belgae and various tribes who had joined them in a league against the Romans, undertakes a successful campaign against one of the most powerful of the tribes of Gaul, the Nervii. They appear to have been partly German, or at any rate under German influences. Having received their submission, Caesar proceeds against a German tribe, the Aduatuci (on the banks of the Meuse?), who had been coming to help the Nervii. The story of their dealings with Caesar represents a kind of 'white flag trick' on a large scale.)

29. Aduatuci, de quibus supra \* scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nervii venirent, hac pugna \* nuntiata, ex itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis, sua omnia in unum oppidum \* egregie naturam munitum contulerunt. 5

Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas \* rupes despectusque haberet, unam ex parte leniter acclivis aditus, in latitudinem non amplius cecipedum, relinquebatur;

10 quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant;  
tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in  
muro collocabant.

Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognati, qui  
 Origin of the Adua- iter \* in provinciam nostram atque  
 15 tuci.  
 Italiam fecerunt.

Tum iis impedimentis, (quae secum agere ac por-  
tare non poterant,) citra flumen Rhenum depositis,  
custodiam ex suis ac praesidium sex millia hominum  
unā reliquerunt.

20 Hi post eorum obitum \* multos annos a finitimis  
exagitati, cum alias \* bellum inferrent, alias illatum  
defenderent, consensu eorum omnium, pace factā,  
hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

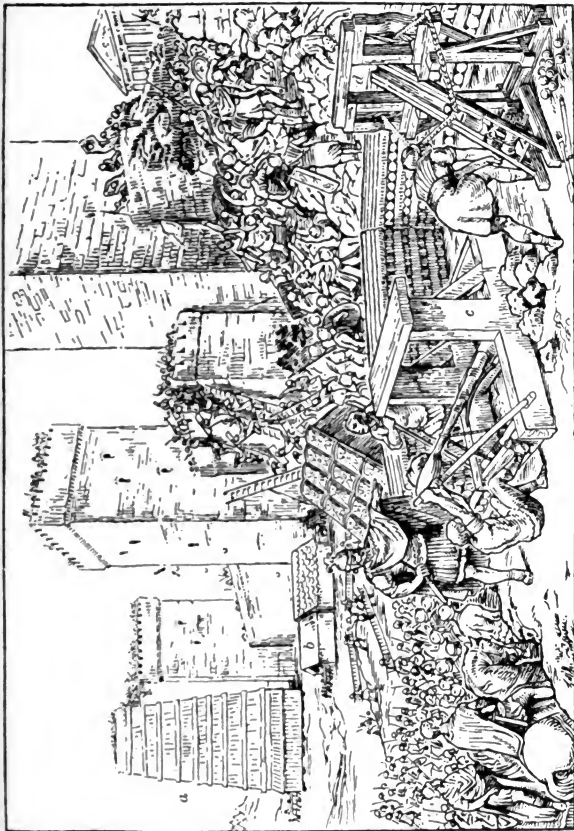
30. Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex  
 25 oppido excursiones faciebant, parvulisque proeliis cum  
nostris contendebant :

Postea vallo pedum XII, in circuitu XV milium,\*  
crebrisque castellis circummuniti, oppido sese contine-  
bant.

30 Ubi vineis \* actis, aggere \* exstructo, turrim procul  
 The Aduatuci first constitui viderunt, primum irridere ex  
 jeer at the Romans  
 and their prepara- muro atque increpitare \* vocibus, quod  
 tions for attack, tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio in-  
 strueretur :

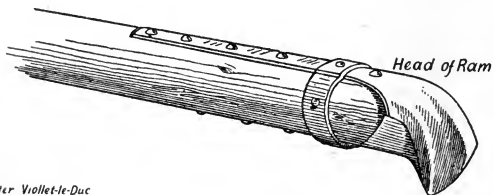
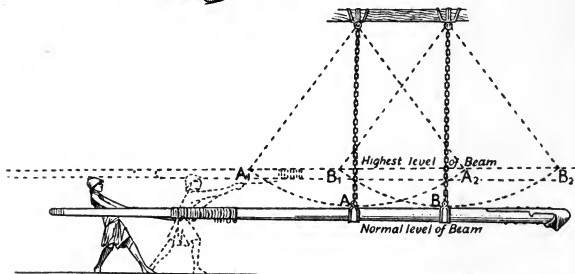
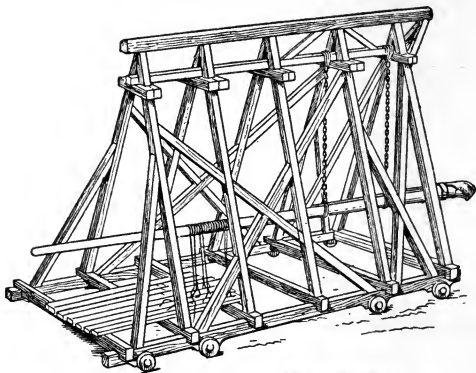
35 quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim  
homines tantulae \* staturae (nam plerumque hominibus  
Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum \* brevitās





STORMING A BESIEGED CITY.

- a. Tower (on wheels).    b. Vinca inclosing 'aries.'    c. Onager.    d. Ballista.



after Viollet-le-Duc

### BATTERING RAM.

The Roman battering ram was usually covered under a 'vinea' as 'b' in last picture.

nostra contemptui \* est) *tanti oneris turrim moturos sese confiderent?*

31. Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus 40 viderunt, novā atque inusitatā specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti :

*non se existimare, Romanos sine ope divinā bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tantā celeritate promovere possent :* but soon offer to 45 submit.

*se suaeque omnia eorum potestati permittere dixerunt.*

*Unum petere ac deprecari : \* si forte pro suā clementiā ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset \* Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret ;* 50

*sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere ; a quibus se defendere traditis \* armis non possent.* They beg to be allowed to keep their arms.

*Sibi praestare,\* si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a populo Romano pati, quam ab his per 55 cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuessent.*

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: *Se magis consuetudine suā quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius quam murum aries \* attigisset, se dedidissent ; sed deditio- tionis nullam esse condicionem, nisi armis traditis ; se id 60 quod in Nerviiis \* fecisset, facturum finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis populi Romani injuriam inferrent.*

*Re nuntiātā ad suos, quae imperarentur, facere \* dixerunt.*

Armorū magnā multitudine de muro in fossam,

They pretend to accept Caesar's terms—unconditional surrender of themselves and their arms.

quae erat ante oppidum, jactā, sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorū adaequarent,

70 et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est, celatā atque in oppido retentā, portis patefactis, eo die pace sunt usi.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire jussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab  
75 militibus injuriam acciperent. Illi ante \* inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, deditioe factā,\* nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indiligentius servaturos crediderunt. Itaque partim cum his, quae retinuerant et celaverant, armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus subito \* intextis, ut temporis

They make a night attack, and fight with extreme bravery.

exiguitas postulabāt, tertiā vigiliā, omnibus copiis repente ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione factā, ex proximis castellis eo concursum est. Pugnatum ab hostibus ita  
85 acriter est, ut \* a viris fortibus, in extremā spe salutis, iniquo loco, contra eos qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacerent,\* pugnari debuit, cum in unā virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret.

90 Occisis ad \* hominum milibus quattuor, reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diei refractis portis, cum jam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris,

Complete defeat: sale of the remainder of the population.

sectionem \* ejus oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab his, qui emerant, capitum numerus ad eum relatus 95 est milium quinquaginta trium.

(34. Caesar receives news of the surrender and inclusion in the Roman empire of the Western tribes, between the Seine and Brest.)

35. His rebus gestis omni Galliā pacatā, tanta 100  
hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlata  
est, uti ab his nationibus, quae trans  
Rhenum incoherent, mitterentur le- Result of Caesar's  
victories: embassies  
from Germans, etc.,  
offering hostages.  
gati ad Caesarem, quae se obsides daturas, imperata  
facturas pollicerentur. 105

Ob easque res ex litteris Caesaris dierum xv supplicatio \* decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.\*

## *PART III.*

### CAESAR'S DEALINGS WITH TWO GERMAN TRIBES

### THE USIPETES AND TENCTERI

FROM THE GALLIC WAR, BOOK IV.

**55** B.C.

(Book III. gives an account of Caesar's movements in Gaul in 57 and 56 B.C. These comprise : a campaign against some of the South-Eastern tribes ; a naval campaign against the Veneti, in the extreme west of Brittany, near Brest ; one against the Venelli, who occupied the Cherbourg peninsula ; a fourth into Aquitania (south of the Garonne), and a somewhat fruitless one against the Morini and Menapii, in the extreme north.

The first campaign of 55 B.C. is the subject of the next part of our text. Caesar's treatment of the Usipetes and Tencteri received blame from Cato in the Senate, and has been regarded as a blot on his character. We must remember, however, that in both of his dealings with German tribes up to now he had met with treacherous attacks, and when this happened a third time he treated it with severe reprisals. It will be noticed also that the very men whom he is (perhaps rightly) blamed for retaining as prisoners, were so much impressed by his general clemency that they preferred to remain in his power rather than be set at liberty and left to the mercy of their neighbours.)

1. Eā, quae secuta est, hieme (qui fuit annus Cn. Pompeio\* M. Crasso consulibus) Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri magnā cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod a Suebis 5 complures annos exagitati, bello premebantur et agriculturā prohibebantur.

Sueborum \* gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum Account of the Suebi, the 'Prussians' of ancient times. 10 pagos\* habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causā ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura, nec ratio atque usus belli remittitur. 15 Sed privati ac separati agri\* apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causā licet. Neque multum\* frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi genere et quotidianā 20 exercitatione et libertate vitae, cum a pueris\* nullo officio aut disciplinā\* assuefacti, nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant et vires alit et immani corporum magnitudine\* homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque 25 vestitus,\* praeter pelles, habeant quicquam (quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta), et laventur in fluminibus.

2. Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus magis eo ut,\*  
 30 quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam  
 quo \* ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin  
 etiam \* jumentis, quibus maxime Galli delectantur,  
 quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis  
 non utuntur; sed quae \* sunt apud eos nata, prava  
 35 Simple, frugal and atque deformia, haec quotidianā exer-  
 temperate life. citatione, summi \* ut sint laboris,  
 efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis \* saepe ex equis desi-  
 liunt, ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere  
 vestigio assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus  
 40 est, recipiunt; neque eorum moribus turpius quic-  
 quam aut inertius habetur, quam ephippiis \* uti.  
 Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum  
 quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino  
 importari non sinunt, quod eā re ad laborem ferendum  
 45 remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

3. Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam  
 They like elbow latissime a suis finibus vacare agros;  
 room, hac re significari,\* magnum numerum  
 civitatum suam \* vim sustinere non posse. Itaque  
 50 unā ex parte \* a Suebis circiter milia passuum DC agri  
 vacare dicuntur.\* Ad alteram partem \* succedunt  
 Ubii, quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est  
 captus Germanorum, et paulo sunt ejusdem generis  
 ceteris humaniores, propterea quod Rhenum attingunt,  
 55 multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi prop-  
 ter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti.\*





GERMAN CAVALRY AND ROMAN INFANTRY.

(Here the pilum seems to be used for stabbing, not throwing :  
notice the absence of ephippia.)

*From the column of Antoninus (A.D. 165).*

Hos cum Suebi, multis saepe bellis experti, propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt ac  
60 multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

4. In eadem causā \* fuerunt Usipetes et Tencteri,   
 and consequently quos supra diximus,\* qui complures  
 bully their neigh- annos Sueborum vim sustinuerunt :  
 bours, the Usipetes, etc., ad extremum tamen, agris expulsi et  
 65 multis Germaniae locis triennium vagati, ad Rhenum pervenerunt.

Quas regiones Menapii incolebant et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia vicosque habebant : sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti ex his aedi-  
 70 ficiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverunt et, cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis, Germanos transire prohibebant.\*

Illi, omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere \* propter inopiam navium, neque clam transire propter cus-  
 75 who retaliate on todias Menapiorum possent, reverti \*  
 their Gallic neigh- bours, the Menapii. se in suas sedes regionesque simulave-  
 runt, et, tridui viam progressi, rursus reverterunt. Deinde, omni hoc itinere unā nocte equitatu\* con-  
 fecto, inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt,  
 80 qui, de Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis, navibusque eorum occupatis, prius quam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum quieta in suis sedibus erat, certior fieret,\*

flumen transierunt, atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occu- 85  
patis reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis \* aluerunt.

5. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmi-  
tatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis  
mobiles et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his \*  
committendum existimavit. 90

(Here follows a description of the Gallic habit of extracting  
information from travellers and acting on it rashly without  
sufficient evidence of its credibility.)

6. Quā consuetudine cognitā Caesar, ne graviori  
bello occurreret, maturius quam consuerat \* ad 95  
exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, ea, quae  
fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit: missas legationes  
ab nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos, invitatosque  
eos uti ab Rheno discederent \*; omniaque, quae postu-  
lassent, ab se fore parata.\* Quā spe adducti, Ger- 100  
mani latius vagabantur et in fines Eburonum et  
Condrusorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientes, pervene-  
rant. Principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea, quae  
cognoverat, dissimulanda \* sibi existi- Caesar decides on  
mavit, eorumque animis permulsis war with these 105  
et confirmatis equitatuque imperato \* bellum cum  
Germanis gerere constituit.

7. Re frumentariā comparatā equitibusque de-  
lectis, iter in ea loca \* facere coepit, quibus in locis  
esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus cum paucorum 110  
dierum iter abesset, legati ab his venerunt, quorum  
haec fuit oratio: *Germanos neque priores populo Romano*

*bellum inferre, neque tamen recusare, si lacessantur, quin \*  
 armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo haec sit  
 115 a maioribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere  
 neque deprecari. Haec tamen \* dicere, venisse invitos,  
 ejectos domo; si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse iis  
 utiles esse amicos; vel sibi agros attribuant, vel patiantur  
 The 'Prussians' of eos tenere quos armis possederint. Sese  
 Caesar's time: the  
 120 Suebi. unis Suebis concedere, quibus ne dii qui-  
 dem immortales pares esse possint; reliquum quidem in  
 terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.*

8. Ad haec quae visum est Caesar respondit; sed  
 exitus fuit orationis: *Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam  
 125 posse, si in Galliā remanerent; neque verum\* esse, qui suos  
 fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare; neque ullos  
 Caesar's reply: they in Galliā vacare agros, qui dari, tantae  
 must not remain in  
 Gaul. praesertim multitudini, sine injuriā  
 possint; sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considerare,  
 130 quorum legati apud se de Sueborum injuriis\* querantur, et  
 a se auxilium petant: hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.*

9. Legati haec se ad suos relatueros dixerunt et, re  
 deliberatā, post diem tertium\* ad Caesarem reversuros:  
*interea ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id  
 135 quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse, dixit. Cognoverat  
 Caesar refuses their enim, magnam partem equitatus ab  
 request that he will his aliquot diebus ante praedandi  
 not advance. His frumentandique causā ad Ambivaritos  
 reason. trans Mosam missam. Hos exspectari equites atque  
 140 eius rei causā moram interponi arbitrabatur.*

(10. An account of the Meuse (Mosa) and the Rhine (Rhenus). The islands at the mouth of the Rhine are mostly inhabited, says the writer—a feris barbarisque nationibus, ex quibus sunt, qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur.)

11. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi, magnopere ne longius progredereetur, orabant. Cum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos\* equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret, Germans want delay. eosque pugna prohiberet, sibi ut potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi; quorum\* si principes ac senatus sibi jurejurando fidem fecissent, eā condicione, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant\*: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret.\* 150  
155

Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo\* pertinere arbitrabatur, ut, tridui morā interpositā, equites eorum, qui abessent, revertentur: tamen sese non longius milibus passuum quattuor aquationis causā processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent,\* ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Caesar suspicious of their motives. 160

Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit, qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent, et si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.\* 165

12. At hostes,\* ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat quinque milium numerus,

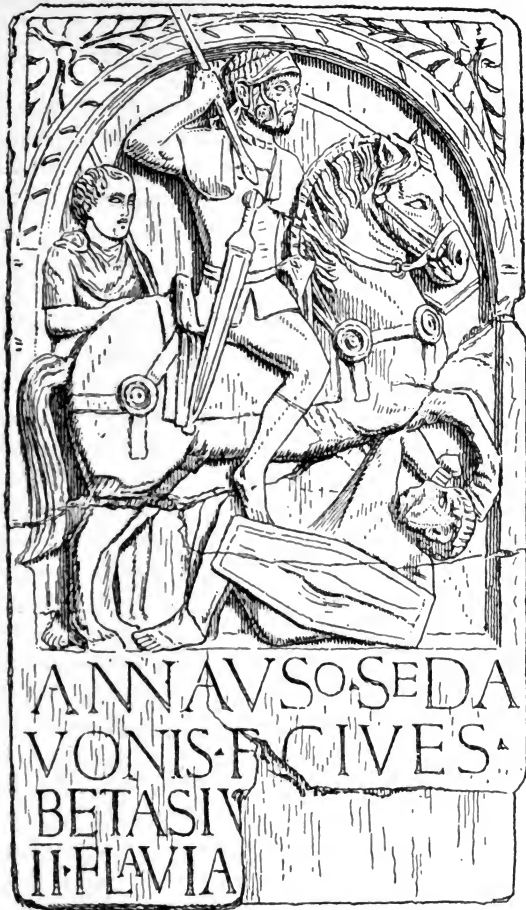
cum ipsi non amplius DCCC equites haberent, (quod ii,  
 170 qui frumentandi causā ierant trans Mosam, nondum  
 redierant,) nihil timentibus nostris, (quod legati  
 eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant, atque is

Attack by German  
 cavalry on Caesar's  
 cavalry during day  
 of truce. Panic and  
 flight of Romans.

dies indutiis erat ab his petitus,) im-  
 petu facto, celeriter nostros pertur-  
 175 baverunt. Nostris rursus resisten-  
 tibus, consuetudine suā ad pedes desiluerunt, suffos-  
 sisque equis,\* compluribusque nostris dejectis, reliquos  
 in fugam coniecerunt atque ita perterritos egerunt,  
 ut non prius fugā desisterent, quam in conspectum  
 180 agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus  
 nostris interficiuntur quattuor et septuaginta, in his  
 vir fortissimus Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere  
 natus, cujus avus in civitate suā regnum obtinuerat,  
 amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus.

185 Hic \* cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium  
 ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit, ipse  
 A double exploit  
 worthy of the V.C. equo vulnerato dejectus, quoad potuit,  
 fortissime restitit; cum circumventus, multis vulneri-  
 bus acceptis, cecidisset, atque id frater, qui jam  
 190 proelio excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato  
 equo, se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

13. Hoc facto proelio, Caesar neque jam sibi  
 legatos audiendos neque condiciones accipiendas  
 arbitrabatur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias,  
 195 petitā pace, ultro\* bellum intulissent. Expectare\*  
 vero, dum\* hostium copiae augerentur equitatusque



A GERMAN 'SUFFODIT' A ROMAN CAVALRY HORSE.

(Notice shape of German shield and compare with next picture. The cavalry man is one of the Betasii—Gauls of a part of Belgium.)

*From a tombstone.*

reverteretur, summae dementiae\* esse judicabat: et cognitā Gallorum infirmitate, quantum\* jam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti, 200 sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat.

His constitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato,\* ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissima res accidit: nam 205 postridie ejus diei mane, eādem et perfidiā et simulatione usi, Germani frequentes, omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venerunt, simul,\* ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causā (quod contra atque esset dictum\* 210 et ipsi petissent proelium pridie commisissent,) simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos\* gavisus, illos retineri jussit, ipse\* omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatumque, quod recenti proelio 215 perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi jussit.

14. Acie triplici institutā,\* et celeriter VIII milium itinere confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus 220 nostri et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi\* spatio dato, perturbantur,\* copiasne adversus hostem ducere, an castra defendere, an fugā salutem petere praestaret. Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri, pristini



diei perfidiā incitati, in castra irruerunt. Quo loco, 225  
 qui \* celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris  
 restiterunt, atque inter carros impedimentaue proe-  
 lium commiserunt; at reliqua multitudo puerorum  
 mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo exces-  
 serant Rhenumque transierant) passim fugere coepit; 230  
 ad quos consecrandos Caesar equitatum misit.

15. Germani,\* post tergum clamore audito, cum  
 suos interfici viderent, armis abjectis  
 signisque militaribus relictis se ex  
 castris ejecerunt. Deinde cum ad con-  
 fluentem Mosae et Rheni\* pervenissent, reliquā fugā  
 desperatā, magno numero interfecto,\* reliqui se in  
 flumen praecipitaverunt, atque ibi timore, lassitudine,  
 vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum  
 omnes incolumes, perpaucis vulneratis, ex\* tanti belli 240  
 timore, cum hostium numerus capitum CCCXXX  
 milium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar his,  
 quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit.  
 Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum  
 veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, re-  
 manere se apud eum velle dixerunt. 245  
 His Caesar libertatem \* concessit.

German panic : ter-  
 rible reprisals by  
 the Romans for their  
 treacherous attack.

235

Caesar's clemency to  
 the captives. He  
 decides to cross the  
 Rhine. His reasons.

245

16. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis  
 Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum; quarum  
 illa fuit justissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam 250  
 facile impelli ut in Galliam venirent, suis\* quoque  
 rebus eos timere voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et

audere populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. Accessit\* etiam, quod, illa pars equitatus Usipetum  
 255 et Tencterorum, (quam supra commemoravi prae-  
 dandi frumentandique causā Mosam transisse neque  
 proelio interfuisse,) post fugam suorum se trans  
 Rhenum in fines Sugambrorum receperat, seque cum  
 iis conjunxerat. Ad quos\* cum Caesar nuntios  
 260 misisset, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum  
*intulissent, sibi dederent*, responderunt: *Populi Romani*  
*imperium Rhenum finire: si se\* invito Germanos in*  
*Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quic-*  
*quam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postulet?*  
 265 Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem  
 legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dede-  
 rant, magnopere orabant, *ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod*  
*graviter a Suebis premerentur; vel si id facere occupationibus*  
*reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum trans-*  
 270 *portaret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis*  
*satis futurum.* *Tantum esse nomen atque opinionem ejus*  
*exercitus, Ariovisto pulso et hoc novis-*  
 Effect of Caesar's victories.  
*simo proelio facto, etiam ad ultimas*  
*Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia populi*  
 275 *Romani tuti esse possint.*

Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

17. Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi,

He decides to build a bridge. It is finished in ten days. Rhenum transire decreverat, sed navi-  
 280 bus transire neque satis tutum esse





DESTROYING A GERMAN VILLAGE.

(The houses are made of timber as in Saxon times.)

arbitrabatur, neque suae\* neque populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat. Itaque etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, rapiditatem altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter non traducendum exercitum 285 existimabat.

18. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat\* comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus traducitur. Caesar ad utramque Embassies from German tribes, except from the Sugambri, who flee *en masse*. partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto 290 in fines Sugambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit obsidesque ad se adduci jubet. At Sugambri ex eo tempore, quo pons institui coeptus est, fugā com- 295 paratā hortantibus iis,\* quos ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant, suaque omnia exportaverant, seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, 300 omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis, se in fines Ubiorum recepit, atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suebis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos, postea quam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio 305 habito, nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse; uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos uxores suaque omnia in silvis deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre

possent, unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse  
 310 delectum medium fere regionum earum, quas Suebi  
 obtinerent: hic Romanorum adventum exspectare,  
 atque ibi decertare constituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus his rebus con-  
 The Suebi prepare  
 to resist, but Caesar  
 315 decides to return  
 and destroys his  
 bridge.     fectis, quarum rerum causā traducere  
 exercitum constituerat, ut\* Germanis  
 metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulcis-  
 ceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino  
 XVIII trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem  
 et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam  
 320 recepit pontemque rescidit.

(Immediately after this Caesar undertook his first expedi-  
 tion to Britain—August, B.C. 55. This occupies the second  
 half of *B.G.* Book IV.

In the next year, B.C. 54, comes the second, a much larger,  
 expedition to Britain, in which he penetrated as far as St.  
 Albans, but made no permanent conquest. We must bear in  
 mind that these expeditions, as well as the annual campaigns,  
 were confined to the summer months. In winter the army  
 went into winter quarters, not all together, but in separate  
 camps at considerable distances. Caesar generally spent the  
 winter in Cisalpine Gaul, looking after his political interests  
 in Italy, or attending to the ‘assizes’ and other affairs of  
 his province.

In the winter of 54–53 B.C. the winter camp of Quintus  
 Cicero (one of Caesar’s legati) was attacked and nearly  
 annihilated by the Eburones and Nervii: and this was  
 followed by risings against Caesar throughout nearly all  
 Gaul.)

## PART IV.

### CAESAR AND THE SUEBI

#### FROM THE GALLIC WAR, BOOK VI.

(In B.C. 53 Caesar was intent on punishing two Gallic tribes, the Treveri and the Eburones, and especially Ambiorix, chief of the latter tribe, for his attack on Quintus Cicero's camp in the previous winter, and for the destruction of the army of Sabinus and Cotta. In his pursuit of Ambiorix through the Ardennes he came once more close to the Rhine, and decided to build a bridge over that river as he had done two years before. His object was to punish, or at least to frighten, the German tribes who had sent help to his Gallic enemies. The bridge was built even quicker than on the previous occasion. One German tribe, the Ubii, who had submitted to Caesar before, in presenting a petition to him use these remarkable words, 'ut sibi parcat, ne *communi odio Germanorum* innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant,' which appear to show that, even in their own opinion, the Germans might be regarded as objects of general hatred. The words may possibly mean that the Ubii looked upon Caesar as having a general hatred of all German races, but we have seen before how the Aduatuci admitted themselves to be hated by all their neighbours. The German race which was most generally dreaded and hated was that of the Suebi. Caesar now finds that these Suebi were gathering a vast army from all their dependent tribes in the hill country of central Germany and were awaiting his arrival. He also gets many particulars about the German religion, manners and civilisation, and compares them with what he has himself observed

about the Gallic races. We now give his account of these Germans. After a description of the religion and superstitions of the Gauls he contrasts with them the Germans, as follows.)

21. Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt; nam neque druides habent, qui rebus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Deorum numero eos solos Germans nature worshippers; devoted to hunting and 'militarism' with very little attention to agriculture. ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus juvantur, Solem et Volcanum et Lunam; reliquos ne famā quidem acceperunt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit: ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student.

10 22. Agriculturae non student, majorque pars eorum victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. Neque ququam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos\* gentibus cognationibusque hominum, qui unā coierunt, 15 quantum et quo loco visum est, agri\* attribuunt, atque anno post alio transire cogunt. Ejus rei multas adferunt causas: ne assiduā consuetudine capti studium belli gerendi agriculturā\* commutent; ne Avoidance of comfort, covetousness and party spirit. latos fines parare studeant, potentiores\* humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, quā ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate plebem contineant, cum suas quisque 25 opes cum potentissimis\* aequari videat.



23. Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissime circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere.\* Hoc proprium virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere, neque quem- Cause of their unpopularity. quam prope audere consistere; simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. Cum bellum civitas aut illatum defendit aut infert, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, ut \* vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus, sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos jus dicunt controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra fines cujusque civitatis fiunt; atque ea juventutis exercendae ac desidia minuéndae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit se ducem fore, *qui sequi velint, profiteantur*,\* consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ab multitudine collaudantur: qui ex his secuti non sunt, in desertorum ac proditorum numero ducuntur, omniumque\* his rerum postea fides derogatur. Hospitem violare fas non putant; qui quācunque de causā ad eos venerunt, ab injuriā prohibent, sanctos habent, hisque omnium domus patent victus- que communicatur.

Lack of morality outside their own territories.

Hospitality and honour paid to guests.

(Caesar then proceeds to explain how in former times the Gauls used to be a match for the Germans, even sending

colonies into German territory ; but now the valour of the Gauls had deteriorated, and they did not consider themselves the equals of their neighbours. He next gives an account from hearsay of the large animals peculiar to Germany, the reindeer, the elk and the bison ('aurochs' or 'urus'). The reindeer was, in the accounts he had heard of it, spoken of as an animal with one horn. The elks were without joints to their legs, so that if they fell down they were unable to get up again. This peculiarity was taken advantage of by the German hunters, who cut partly through the trunks of trees against which the elks were in the habit of leaning. These, falling down when the tree broke with their weight, became an easy prey to the German sportsmen. The aurochs—'urus'—were bulls almost of the size of elephants, of great strength, speed and ferocity. They were captured, as are elephants by native Africans, in pits. This was considered the best sport for young men. He who could produce the largest number of horns was privileged to display them in public and thus won great 'kudos.' The horns were lipped with silver and used as cups in the most important feasts.

After this account of the German larger 'fauna,' Caesar explains how he decided not to go on with his expedition against the Suebi. They had withdrawn into the woods, and there was no corn in the country he would have to pass through. He did not however, as on the former occasion, entirely destroy his bridge. He cut down 200 feet of it on the German side, leaving a four-storied tower to guard the far end, and 12 cohorts in charge of this outpost, which was strongly fortified.

There are only two other episodes connecting Caesar and the Germans. The first was the submission of two smaller German tribes living on the west of the Rhine, the Segni and Condrusi: the second a daring attack on one of Caesar's

camps—again that of Cicero—by two thousand of the Sugambri, a German tribe, who had crossed the Rhine to assist in the plunder of the Eburones. Finding themselves near Cicero's camp at Aduatuca near the Meuse, they were induced by a captive to go for larger game than the poor and harassed Eburones. Cicero's garrison consisted mostly of untried troops recently levied in Gaul; and nearly all the Roman wealth was stored in this camp. Here was a great opportunity. They cut off a large body of Cicero's men, who contrary to Caesar's orders had gone out to forage, surprised the camp and nearly captured it. Only the valour of an invalided centurion, Publius Sextius Baculus, one of Caesar's most experienced 'non-coms,' saved the situation. Though he had had no food for five days, he leapt from his hut, seized his arms and was followed by the centurions of the cohort on guard. These kept the foe at bay, and eventually the enemy were driven off and made their way back across the Rhine.

Their attack might easily have been successful, for it caused such a panic in this garrison that when, during that night, some of the cavalry returned bringing news of Caesar's approach, they could not make their frightened comrades believe the news.

It was the general opinion in the garrison that if the main army had been intact, the Germans would never have dared to make their attack. Only Caesar's arrival put an end to the panic. Thus Caesar's last experience of German tribes was not very creditable to his army. For many years however the Germans gave no further trouble to Rome.)

## NOTES

*The numbers refer to the lines of the text or to the page and line.*

### GERUND AND GERUNDIVE—NOTE (1).

As these selections illustrate almost all the uses of the so-called 'gerund' and 'gerundive,' I have thought well to collect them into one note, to be referred to as Note (1). Taking the uses in a convenient order, we have

- (1) *mihi scribendum est*, 'I have to write,' i.e. there is writing { to be done by me.  
for me (to do).
- (2) *mihi epistola scribenda erit*, 'I shall have to write a letter,' i.e. there will be letter-writing for me (to do), or there will be a letter to be written by me. Cp. 7, 113, *quare sibi eam rem suscipiendam (esse) putaret*, and 5, 55, 58 ; 6, 103 ; 53, 285.
- (3) If the verb requires a dative: **a me parendum erat** *Caesari*, { 'obeying'  
'obedience' } was (due) to Caesar from me,' i.e. I had to obey Caesar. Cp. 7, 130, *His rebus (dat.) quam maturrime (a se) occurrendum (esse) putabat*.
- (4) *domum eo scribendi causa*, 'I am going home for the sake of writing,' i.e. I am going home to write. Cp. 39, 17, *incolendi causa*, 'to till the ground.'
- (5) *domum eo epistolae scribendae causa*, '... for letter-writing-sake,' i.e. to write a letter (gerundive attraction). Cp. 18, 425, *ad me oppugnandum*, and 18, 439.

- (6) But *domum eo epistolas scribendi causa*, 'to write letters,' i.e. *for the sake of writing letters*. The 'gerund' is used to avoid the 'jingle' of *epistolarum scribendarum causa*. Cp. 48, 220, *neque consilii habendi* (5), *neque arma capiendi spatio dato* (6), and 26, 615, *pila coniciendi*.

Thus all the above uses are really one; the gerund and gerundive imply the 'action' of the verb, the gerundive as an adjective with a noun, the gerund without one. The idea of duty, expressed in (1), (2) and (3) above, is not inherent in the gerund or gerundive, but is implied in the sentence as '*I have a lesson*' = '*I have a lesson to do*.' It is exactly the same usage as *est mihi liber*, '*I have a book*'; to which could be added *legendus*, '*to read*,' i.e. '*to be read*.' The points to be borne in mind in turning English into Latin in sentences like (1), (2) and (3) are

- A. The sentence has to be turned so that it can be translated *literally* into Latin as in (1), (2) and (3) above.
- B. The person *who has to do the action* is put in the dative, unless the dative is otherwise required as in (3).
- C. The gerund or gerundive must *never agree* with the person who has to do the action.
- D. The tense (i.e. *time*) is expressed by the right tense of the verb *sum*.

## PART I.

### PAGE 1.

1. **Bello Helvetiorum.** The war with the Helvetii occupies the first 29 chapters of Book I.

3. **gratulatum**, supine, *expressing a purpose* after a verb of motion. There are about seven possible ways in prose of expressing a purpose with a verb used transitively. What are they? *N.B.* The *infinitive* is not one of them.

8. **Ea re permissā.** Notice how often sentences begin with an ablative absolute. There are four on this page.

9. **inter se sanxerunt**, '*bound themselves solemnly*'; **inter se** helps to express anything done *mutually*.

11. **fueraut**, 'had been (to him) before.' *N.B.* This is like our (and the French) use of 'been.'

Have you *been* to Paris? } almost = 'gone.'  
Avez-vous été à Paris? }

**reverterunt.** *Reverto* is used intransitively as well as transitively.

12. **sua omniumque**, 'their own safety and (that) of all.' *N.B.* There is no Latin for 'that' in 'that of'; it is simply not put in.

14. **Caesari.** We say 'at Caesar's feet'; the Latin 'at the feet to Caesar.' The dative expresses the person affected by the action, as in French, *Je lui frapperai la tête* = 'I will smack his head.'

16. **Divitiacus** and **Dumnorix** were brothers, chiefs of the **Aedui**, one of the leading tribes in central Gaul. **Divitiacus** favoured the Romans; **Dumnorix** was, from the Gallic point of view, a patriot, anti-Roman. The Gallic tribes, like the peoples in India, were constantly at war amongst themselves.

18. **si enuntiatum erit.** The Latin use of tenses is direct and accurate, 'If anything shall have been let out'; i.e. 'The punishment will come after the leaking out of the news.' So they use the *future perfect*. We loosely use the present, 'If anything comes out.'

19. **venturos.** The *esse* to make up an infin. is often omitted.

#### PAGE 2.

20. **Galliae totius.** This means the central part of Gaul, where the tribes are called *Galli* or *Celtae*. In *B.G.* 1. 1 Caesar explains that Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts, the middle one being called '*Gallia*.'

23. **ab Arvernīs ... mercede.** *N.B.* One abl., with *ab*, the agent, the other, without *ab*, the instrument or means.

27. It is not a new thing for the Germans to be enamoured of their neighbours' possessions and culture, while belauding their own,

'For they come to us and succeed so well,  
That they settle on our shore;  
And the Fatherland, the happy Fatherland,  
Never sees them any more.' (G. Grossmith.)

31. **clientes**, '*dependents*,' whether individuals or tribes. Here it is '*tribes*.'

38. **repetituros**. Cp. l. 19.

41. Notice the sanctity of an oath. Divitiacus alone of his tribe had not taken one. He therefore does the talking.

**jurarem, darem**. Why subj. ?

43. **Romam ad senatum**. Notice the difference between English and Latin in the use of prepositional phrases. In English we should often say 'to the senate *at* Rome,' making '*at Rome*' adjectival to '*senate*.' In Latin these phrases must go with a verb, and are therefore *adverbial*, so that you can never say *domus in palude* for '*the house on the marsh*,' but *domus in palude sita*. Why is there no prep. with *Romam* ?

44. Parse **postulatum**.

#### PAGE 5.

55. **parandi sunt** agrees with the masc. *locus* rather than the fem. *sedes*, '*have to be prepared*.'

**His** = '*for these*.' See note (1) (3).

58. **Gallicus**, sc. *ager*. The soil of Gaul, Caesar means, is infinitely superior to that of Germany. '*Is not to be compared with that of the Germans*'; i.e. '*There is no comparing the soil of Gaul*,' etc. See note (1) (2).

61. **imperat**, used here intransitively, '*rules*.' See 43, 106 and note.

62. *N.B.* the idiom **nobilissimus quisque**, '*all the noblest men*.'

64. **facta erit**. See l. 18.

67. **si quid auxilii**, '*if any help*,' '*partitive*' gen. See 39, 16, note.

68. **omnibus Gallis ... faciendum**, '*all the Gauls will have to do ...*' See note (1).

73. **non dubitamus quin ...**, '*we have no doubt (but) that he will exact*,' etc. The pres. subj. has a future sense here, as often, e.g. after verbs of fearing, *Vereor ne moriatur*, '*I fear he will die*.' *quin* is used in this way with pres. or imperf. subj. after expressions of doubt, verbs of hindering,

etc., when used with a negative. Cp. 7, 125; 21, 510; 44, 113.

## PAGE 6.

76. **suā atque exercitus**, 'by his own influence and (that) of the army.' See note on l. 12.

83. **habitā**. See vocab. *habeo*.

85. **unos**, 'alone.'

86. **facerent**, subj. because it is a clause depending on an acc. and infin.

89. **respondere**, **permanere**, historical infin., common in narrative instead of a string of verbs in pres., imperf., or past.

92. **Cum neque posset**, 'And being unable.' *Cum* with subj. expresses the circumstances under which some action takes place. It can often be rendered by 'being...' or 'having....'

**idem**, 'the same (i.e. as did it before, namely) *Divitiacus*' = 'Divitiacus again replied.'

94. Parse **hoc**.

99. **propterea**, 'for this reason.' Often used to introduce and emphasize **quod**, 'because.' Cp. *ideo ... ut* = 'for this purpose that ...'

## PAGE 7.

106. **curae**, dative of the complement; often called 'dative of purpose.' Never use any dative in this way until you have seen it in use. It is a good thing to collect examples of it; *praesidio*, *auxilio*, etc.

113. **suscipiendam**, sc. *esse*. Cp. l. 68, note. See note (1) (2).

121. 'The fact of the Germans becoming accustomed to cross the Rhine.' Parse *consuescere*, also *Germanos*.

125. **quin**. Cp. note on l. 73. Here the imperf. subj. is used, not the pres.; why? Notice the use of *tempero* here, *non sibi temperabit quin ...*, 'he will not refrain from ..., i.e. control himself so as not to ...'



128. **Cimbri Teutonique.** Defeated by Marius B.C. 101 and 102 respectively. See introd. 'The Germans.'

130. **maturrime**, superl. adv. of *matur-us* (generally *maturissimus*), is here treated as a stem in *r*. Sc. *esse* with *occurrentum*. If the reflexive pronoun had been inserted here, it would be *a se*, as *His rebus* is already in the dative. Words 'taking' a dative, e.g. *occurro*, have to be used impersonally in the passive. '*He thought he must deal with these matters ...*' See note (1) (3).

## PAGE 8.

137. **medium utriusque.** *N.B.* *medius* used with a genitive, '*between the two.*'

143. **si quid me vis**, two accs., *person* and *thing*. Cp. *rogo, celo*, etc.

148. **quid ... negotii.** Cp. note, 39, 16. *sit*, subj. in indirect question.

157. **ut .. graveris, neque ... putes.** Notice *neque* with subj. after *ut* in a *consequence*. If it were a *purpose* (final clause) there would be *neu* or *neve* (not *neque*).

158. **dicendum ....** Cp. note (1) (1). Here the dat. (*tibi*) is omitted.

## PAGE 9.

165. **bellum inferas.** This is the commonest phrase used by Caesar for 'invasion,' 'taking the offensive against'; cp. *bellum defendere*, '*act on the defensive,*' 19, 442; *bellum* is the object, *his sociisque* dative of 'indirect object.'

168. **ex**, '*in accordance with,*' '*dependent upon.*' (The Latins speak of a thing hanging *from* a peg, not hanging *on* it.)

170. **non neglecturus sum**, '*I do not intend to overlook.*' Cp. l. 184.

172. **vicerint.** Here the subj. is twice used, where we should expect the indic., because it depends on the subj. *ut imperent*. This short sentence contains one noun clause, two adjective clauses, one adverbial. Find them, and compare from Ovid

[*Si quis, { qui (quid agam,) forte requiret } erit*] ...

180. **temptarunt**. The *-ve-* or *-vi-* in perfects and pluperfects is generally omitted, = *tempta(vē)runt*. Cp. l. 290.

183. **facias**, subj. used with *qui*, expressing the cause, 'because you are injuring ...' (*deteriora facias*).

186. **convenit**, impersonal, 'has been agreed upon.' Cp. *constat* = 'it is agreed.'

## PAGE 10.

188. **fraternum nomen**, 'the name of brother of the Roman people.' Adj. for gen.

190. **Quod ...**, 'As for your threat to me ...'

193. **Cum** introducing time (not circumstances) has indie. not subj. For tense, cp. note, l. 18; also *manebunt* and *pendent*, l. 186. *N.B.* the difference between

*cum tempestas idonea sit, solvemus*

and *cum tempestas idonea erit, solvemus*.

They imply exactly the opposite of each other. Translate them both.

**congregator**, the 'future imperative,' used when the thing to be done is not in the immediate present, *i.e.* with an 'if' or 'when' clause containing a future or fut. perf.

197. **eodem tempore**. This, like *simul*, shows that two things at least are going to be mentioned.

204. **pagos**, 'cantons,' *i.e.* originally a number of families—something like our word 'hundred'; it afterwards became a place name, as did 'hundred.'

211. **resisti**, impersonal use of passive. 'resistance could be made less easily.' Notice *ne* + subj. after *verebatur*, and cp. *timere ut ...*, l. 264.

214. **tridui**, gen. as in English, 'a three days' march.'

215. **ad occupandum Vesontionem**. *N.B.* *Vesontio* is *masc.*, so we cannot tell whether *occupandum* is gerund or gerundive.

## PAGE 11.

218. **ne accideret**, 'to prevent this happening.' Cp. note, 23, 553.

224. **ad ducendum bellum**, 'for prolonging a campaign.' See Vocab. *duco*, and cp. note (1) (5).

227. **non amplius.** Neither abl. nor *quam* is used with *amplius*. Why is *pedum* gen.?

232. **Hunc, i.e. mons,** the last thing mentioned in the masculine singular.

241. **ingenti magnitudine ... virtute,** etc., ablatives of 'description' or 'quality.' They cannot be used without an adjective.

## PAGE 12.

244. **tribuni militum.** There were nominally six to a legion, who were supposed to command in rotation, each for two months. Caesar, however, generally put his legions in charge of experienced officers, called *legati*, i.e. with powers 'delegated' by the commander-in-chief. *N.B.* Don't translate *legatus* as 'lieutenant,' but as 'general' or 'second in command.'

**praefecti,** the commanders of the auxiliary troops: slingers, archers, etc.

245. **ex urbe.** *urbs* = 'Rome,' as 'town' means 'London.'

248. **alius aliā causā illatā,** 'one putting forward one excuse, another another'; i.e. 'alleging various excuses for going home.' Notice the doubled use of *alius*.

249. **diceret,** a verb of 'saying' giving 'an alleged reason' is put into the subj. Cp. *rediit quod se oblitum nescio quid diceret*, Cic., 'He returned, because he said he had forgotten something.'

260. **qui equitatus praecerant.** These would be the officers in the cavalry corresponding to the *centuriones* of the legions; inferior to the *praefecti*.

261. **timidos.** Why acc.? What other change would be necessary if it were *timidi*?

264. **rem frumentariam,** etc., 'others feared (as regards) the corn supply,' a loose acc. with *timebant*; *ut*, 'that it might not be brought up easily enough.' *ut* after expressions of fearing = *ne non*. 'I fear he will do this,' *timeo ne hoc faciat*; 'I fear he won't do it' = *vereor ut (ne non) hoc faciat*.

266. After **renuntiaverant** you ought naturally to look out for an acc. and infin., and insert 'that' in English.

267. **signa ferri**, '*an advance*,' lit. 'the standards to be moved.'

**non fore dicto audientes milites.** *fore* is the only real fut. infin. in Latin. *N.B.* the phrase *dicto audiens*, '*obedient*.' This is a good instance of how a verb, *audio*, can 'govern' two cases. Usually *audio* = '*I hear*' with acc. : *audio te* or *audio tuam vocem* ; but in the sense of 'listen to' or 'obey' it takes a dative, generally in this phrase, *dicto audiens sum (tibi)*, '*I am obedient to you*.' Always try to think *why* a verb should require a dative.

269. **consilio**, '*a meeting*' (not for discussion). *concilium* = '*a regular assembly*' or '*council*' (for discussing things).

270. **omnium ordinum.** See introduction, 'The Army.'

### PAGE 13.

274. **ducamini**, subj. in indirect question after *quaerendum*, introduced by *quam in partem* and *quo consilio* = '*Why do you think you have any right to inquire where*' etc.? Always look out for indirect questions after interrogative words depending on verbs of asking, telling, knowing, etc. Contrast subj. in l. 277.

**me consule**, abl. abs., '*in my consulship*,' B.C. 59 ; i.e. the previous year.

277. **judicet**, a subj. in a direct question. *Why should anyone think?* Called '*deliberative*' subj. *Quid faciam?* '*What am I to do?*'

278. **Mihi ... persuadetur ... repudiaturum.** Notice (1) the dative, '*I am persuaded that ...*' Why can't it be *ego persuadeor*? (2) *persuadeo* can be used (a) as here with acc. and infin., '*that something is a fact*'; (b) with *ut* and subj. '*to do something*.' (3) *cognitis ... perspecta*. The abl. abs. like other adverbial phrases, qualifies the following verb, here *repudiaturum*.

281. **Quod si**, '*But if*' (i.e. 'in regard to which matter, if he,' etc.).

284. **periculum** has its literal meaning here connected with *ex-perior*, '*trial, experience*.'

288. **servili tumultu**, B.C. 73 to 71. A formidable revolt of slaves, originating in the gladiator class, and led by the

gladiator Spartacus. Put down, after several defeats, by M. Crassus. There were many Germans taking part in it, and that is why Caesar mentions it here.

288. **quos**, sc. **eos**. 'The men whom, when they were unarmed, you had—unreasonably—feared, the same men afterwards, when armed and victorious, you triumphed over'; i.e. 'You feared them when they were a badly armed mob, but afterwards, when they had got arms and had gained several victories, you beat them.'

290. **superastis**, short for *superavistis*; also *superarunt* = *superaverunt*.

294. The reasoning is like 'Euclid.' 'The Helvetii have often beaten the Germans; we have beaten the Helvetii; how much more ought we to beat the Germans!'

295. **proelium**, the battle mentioned in l. 31.

#### PAGE 14.

300. **neque sui potestatem fecisset**, 'and had not given (them) a chance of attacking him'; **sui**, objective gen. with *potestatem*. Cp. the gen. after *potior*: *urbis potitus est*. *N.B.* **nostri** and **vestri** are always objective genitive; **nostri memoria** = 'the memory of us.' Why called 'objective'?

**desperantes ... dispersos**, i.e. *Gallos*, understood from *Gallis*, l. 298. 'Having attacked them when they had begun to despair about a battle and had begun to disperse' etc.

301. **ratione**, 'stratagem, cunning.' *N.B.* 'reason' = *causa*.

306. **cum desperant**, 'in despairing.' Here *cum* is used with an indic., which is usual where there is 'identity of action,' i.e. *cum desperant* represents the thing they do (*faciunt*), not the reason why they do it.

311. **Quod non ... dicuntur**, 'As for it being said that the soldiers will not obey,' etc. What case is *milites*? *N.B.*—'It is said that we are black' = *nigri esse dicimur*, not *dicitur nos esse nigros*. Here the impersonal expression is avoided.

313. 'I know that whenever it has happened that a general has not been obeyed' (lit. 'to whomsoever an army has not been (subj.) obedient'), 'that general has either been unfortunate, or has been convicted of self-seeking.' Translate this literally.

315. **convictam.** See vocab. *convinco*.

318. **collaturus fui,** '*I was about to put off.*' Cp. l. 170.

319. **repraesentabo,** '*I will do at once.*' What does the 're' mean here? It has its proper force of 'back'—the present is 'back' from the future, just as the past is 'back' from the present. *repraesento* is a commercial term = '*pay on the spot.*'

**proxima** = '*next*' or '*last,*' i.e. either '*to-night*' or '*last night.*' How do you tell which?

320. **quam primum,** '*as soon as possible.*' Cf. *quam celerrime*. Remember *primus* is a superlative.

321. **valeat.** Why subj.?

322. **sequetur.** Cp. l. 18 and note. Why is this *future* and *enuntiatum erit fut. perf.*?

325. **cohors praetoria,** '*bodyguard.*' The commander being often a 'praetor,' i.e. the officer next in importance to the 'consul,' things connected with a commander were described as 'praetorius,' his tent in the camp being the 'praetorium.'

#### PAGE 15.

328. **mirum in modum,** '*to a wonderful degree.*'

332. **fecisset,** subj. because it represents the reason which *they* gave.

333. **paratissimam.** Why fem.?

335. **centuriones primorum ordinum.** See Introd. 'The Army.'

343. **apertis locis,** '*by open ground,*' i.e. avoiding the difficult valley of the Doubs (Dubis) and making a detour to the N.E. See Geographical Notes.

345. **cum ... intermitteret,** '*his march not being interrupted.*' Cp. note, l. 92.

354. **petenti,** sc. *sibi,* i.e. Caesar.

#### PAGE 16.

358. **fore ut pertinaciā desisteret,** '*that (it would come about that) he would give up his obstinacy.*' *pertinacia*, abl. of 'separation.' *fore ut* with subj. is often used instead of a fut. infin.

363. **vereri se**, etc. Cp. note on l. 264.

364. **veniret**, imp. subj., 3rd pers. in Or. Obliqua = imperative in Or. Recta. Here = 'let each come.'

366. **neque ... neque**. See introd., Hints on Translation, p. xxxvii, 2.

369. **omnibus ... detractis**, a somewhat ambiguous expression; to understand it, notice that *aliquem equo* (abl.) *detrahere* = pull a man off a horse; therefore *omnibus Gallis equitibus* (ex) *equis detractis*, etc. = (actively) 'take all the Gallic cavalry off their horses, and put on them (eo = French y) the soldiers of the 10th legion.' Try in what other ways you might take the words.

373. **si quid opus facto esset**, 'if any strong action should be necessary.' N.B. *opus est* with abl. = 'there is need of ...,' i.e. 'there is work to be done by ...' Notice use of *factum* = 'action.'

375. **Quod cum fieret**, 'when this was being done.'

379. **ad equum rescribere**. In understanding this joke, we must remember: (1) It was a promotion to an ordinary man to be made an *eques*, i.e. a Roman 'knight,' (2) it would be a degradation for a legionary soldier to be made a cavalry man, *eques*, the cavalry being usually levied from the subject races. It would therefore be a somewhat similar joke if, supposing a man were promoted to the position of 'Master of the Buckhounds,' someone said he was being 'sent to the dogs.'

380. **tumulus**. See Geographical Notes.

#### PAGE 17.

384. **passibus ducentis**. A Roman 'passus' was a double pace, i.e. pace with both feet.

395. **cum ... haberes**, 'having no excuse,' etc., i.e. 'although you had ...' Cp. note, l. 92.

408. **iis**, dat. of 'indirect object' after *eripio*; as after *adimo*—*ei librum ademi*—'I took the book from him' (i.e. so as to affect him).

**id** is explained by *quod ... attulerunt*, 'what they brought to the friendship of the Roman people,' i.e. 'what they possessed when they became friends of the Roman people.'

## PAGE 18.

430. **suā voluntate.** Cp. this statement with the details given in Divitiacus' speech, page 5, line 60, etc.

432. **ornamento,** etc., a dative of the 'complement.' Cf. l. 106, note. The reason for this dative will be understood if we consider that two *nominatives* connected by *est* would be regarded as identical; e.g. to take one of these datives which has a physical meaning: *rubori*, 'a cause for blushing.' If a man said *hoc est rubor*, it would mean that this 'is an (actual) blush'; but *hoc est rubori* = 'this is a reason for blushing.'

438. **Quod,** etc., 'as for my bringing over' Cp. l. 311.

## PAGE 19.

442. So the Germans to-day say this war is a war of 'defence' not of 'offence.' See the Kaiser's message reported August 2, 1915.

443. **prius...quam.** The *prius* is often put with the clause describing the action which comes first in order of time: with *quam* understand *venit*.

446. **Quid tibi vis?** 'What do you want' (for yourself)? a colloquial use.

448. **ut...oporteat,** 'As it would not be right for me to be allowed to come,' etc. N.B. the use of the pres. subj. in 'conditional' sentences, *Si tu cantes, ego rideam* = 'If you were to sing I should laugh'; but *si tu cantares, ego riderem* = 'If you had been singing, I should have been laughing.' What is the difference implied as to the actual fact?

453. **bello Allobrogum proximo,** B.C. 61. See vocab. *Allobroges*. There is something in Ariovistus' argument. 'What is the use of your calling the Aedui your "brothers," when (1) they did not help you in your war with the Allobroges three years ago, and (2) you have not, up to now, helped them against me?' For *proximo*, cp. l. 319.

457. **quem exercitum.** We should say, 'the army which.' The antecedent is often put in the same clause with the relative in Latin. The whole sentence might run, 'quem exercitum in Galliā habes, (illum exercitum) mei opprimendi causā habes.' Cp. 43, 109 and note.



460. **Qui nisi decedes**, 'and unless you depart,' etc. What tense?

465. We notice that Ariovistus, though called a 'barbarian,' had plenty of friends at Rome, and knew what was the state of things there; e.g. that Caesar was the leader of the popular party as against the senate and the aristocratic party.

**compertum habeo**, 'I have found out.' We see here how the French and English perfect have developed. 'I have written this letter' = 'I have the letter (already) written,' *habeo epistolam scriptam*.

#### PAGE 20.

471. **sine ullo tuo labore et periculo conficiam**. The Or. Obliqua in the original is rather obscure. The whole sentence runs: *Quod si discessisset* (i.e. Caesar) *et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi* (Ariovistus) *tradidisset*, *magno se* (Ar.) *illum* (Caes.) *praemio remuneraturum et quaecumque bella geriret, sine ullo ejus labore et periculo confecturum*. The question is whether the subject of *vellet* and *confecturum* is Caesar or Ariovistus. In grammar it ought to be Ariovistus, but in sense 'Caesar' would be preferable. Ariovistus is trying to persuade Caesar to depart. Which is the best argument? 'If you depart I will reward you handsomely, and I shall be able to finish any wars I like to undertake without any danger or trouble { to } you,' or 'I will reward you handsomely, and you will be able to finish any wars without any trouble or danger to yourself from me.' It is generally taken as meaning the former, and I have let it so stand in the text, but I am not sure that it would not have been better to put *conficies* instead of *conficiam*.

477. **Arvernos et Rutenos**. See vocab. *Arverni*. Translate *quibus*, etc., 'and them the Roman people pardoned.'

484. **suis**. *Suis* = 'belonging to the (3rd person) subject': here the subject not of *voluisset* but of *uti*, 'wished them to enjoy their own laws.'

493. **pulsis hostibus**. Put 'that' after *nolebat*. 'He did not wish that, after the enemy were conquered, it could be said,' etc.

494. **per fidem.** This possibly explains the words *perfidus*, *perfidia*: 'breaking through a promise.'

## PAGE 21.

498. **interdixisset.** See vocab. Why are this verb and the two next in the subjunctive? Cp. l. 274.

503. **quae inter eos agi coeptae (essent).** *N.B. hoc facere coepi* = 'I begin to do this'; but '*This begins to be done*' = *hoc fieri coeptum est*. Try to find from this the rule for the use of the passive of *coepi*. Cp. 53, 287.

510. **quin ... conicerent.** Cp. l. 74, note, and l. 125.

514. **C. Valerius Proculus.** A Gaul by birth, whose father had been given the Roman citizenship (see next line), and, as so often happened, had taken a Roman name. Cp. Paul = Paulus (Roman), a second name taken by Saul (Hebrew).

518. **Multā** goes with *linguā*, 'to a great extent.'

519. **in eo**, 'in his case,' i.e. Valerius; *in* often = 'in the case of.'

## PAGE 22.

526. **conantes**, 'when they tried.' What case is it?

529. **sub monte**, 'at the foot of  $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} the \\ a \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$  hill.' See Geographical Notes, Part I.

535. **ut ... non deesset.** Here is *ut ... non* in a 'purpose' (rather than *ne*). Try to see why.

538. **his omnibus diebus**, 'all these days,' not time 'how long,' which would be acc., but 'time when.' Every day he refused to come out.

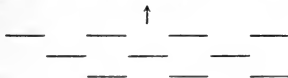
547. **si qui**, adj., sc. *eques*; the pronominal form is *si quis*.

548. **deciderat.** The pluperfect is used to express what happened (or might happen) several times over in the battle. Caesar and Cicero generally use the pluperfect indic. in this sense, Livy the subj. Why is it pluperfect?

549. **si quo**, etc. 'If they had to advance in any direction (*quo*) further (than would be naturally desirable) ...'

553. **ne ... prohiberetur.** This being an adverbial clause expressing his object in choosing a new camp, comes before the main clause *locum delegit*. Translate, 'to avoid being kept any longer from his supplies ; ne + subj. is often best translated by something like 'to avoid,' or 'to prevent.'

557. **acie triplici instructā**, i.e. three parallel lines arranged thus in each legion, which consisted of ten cohorts :



each cohort being opposite a gap in the line next in front, ready to come up if called upon.

568. **instituto suo**, '*according to his plan*,' i.e. to bring on an engagement.

583. **matres.** One German woman, *Veluda*, in the reign of Vespasian (A.D. 69-79), was regarded as a goddess.

584. *sortibus et vaticinationibus*, ... '*lots and auguries, prophecies.*' We learn from Tacitus (*Germania*, ch. 10) that '*lots*' (= *sortes*), were usually taken amongst the Germans from small portions of twigs of fruit trees. They cut marks on them, and then tossed them up haphazard on a cloth; the result would be kind of letters or words (Runes?) formed by chance. After this, resort was had to auguries of various kinds, *e.g.* the behaviour of a pair of white horses kept for this purpose and never used for work, the auguries depending upon their movements and whinnys. Cp. the story of the ark in 1 *Sam.* vi.

586. **ex usu**, 'advantageous.' **necne**, 'or not,' as usual in indirect questions: a direct question would require *an non*.

588. The new moon. Are the Germans actuated by any similar superstitions now? July 23, 1914, the date of the Austrian ultimatum to Serbia, coincided with 'new moon,' and war was declared on July 28, i.e. *non ante novam lunam*.

591. **alarios**, '*the auxiliary troops.*' These were usually placed on the wings (*alae*) of the army in battle. Here they were drawn up all together as a legionary force, apparently in order to make Ariovistus think the number of regular soldiers was greater than the reality—*ut ad speciem alariis uteretur*, '*in order to use them for show.*'

599. **Harudes**, etc. The Harudes, Marcomanni (Marshmen) and Sedusii are not marked on the map, being either unknown or outside its limits to the East.

603. **Eo**, '*on them,*' i.e. on the waggons. Cp. l. 370, where *eo* = '*on the horses*', *raeda* was a four-wheeled, *carrus* a two-wheeled vehicle.

607. **singulis ... praefecit**. This appears to mean that Caesar put five of his six legions under a legatus each, the sixth under the quaestor. The quaestor was properly a financial officer; Caesar would have *one* with him; he himself had held this position in Spain. See introd., Life of Caesar.

#### PAGE 26.

613. **Ita** goes closely with *acriter* to introduce the *ut*, as does the next *ita* with *repente celeriterque*. *N.B.* *itaque* is here two words, not *itaque*, '*and so or therefore.*'

615. **pila coniciendi**, '*room for (lit. of) throwing the javelins.*' See note (1) (6). As to the facts, the throwing of the *pilum* was the first 'act of war' for a legionary soldier. It was an attempt to disable the foe, and was not repeated, the *pilum* being then abandoned and nothing but the short sword (*gladius*) used. Here they abandoned the *pilum* unused: the rush of the enemy was so rapid that there was not time or room for it.

In the picture opp. p. 40 the *pilum* is apparently being used for 'stabbing.' The artist has shortened it so that it should not take up too much room in the picture. Possibly the Roman soldier has seized a German spear.

619. **phalange factā**, '*forming a phalanx,*' i.e. a compact mass of troops, those behind the front rank holding their shields above their heads. Notice the spirited manner in which the Romans treated this formation (l. 622) by jumping on to the shields.

628. **P. Crassus.** His father, the 'millionaire' Crassus, was the third member of the great 'triumvirate'—Pompey, Caesar, and Crassus. Father and son both lost their lives in the disaster at Carrhae (Haran), near the upper Euphrates, where a whole Roman army under Crassus (senr.) was destroyed by the Parthians (B.C. 53).

629. **expeditior**, 'more free to move,' i.e. than the officers of the legions in the third line. Crassus' quick action 'saved the situation.' *expeditus* is opp. of *impeditus*, 'encumbered.'

634. **flumen Rhenum.** See Geographical Notes.

## PAGE 27.

640. **equitatu**, 'with (i.e. by means of) the cavalry.'

644. **Noricum** was a country containing the 'Noric Alps,' south of the Danube. *Norica* = 'a Norican (princess).'

645. **duxerat**, 'had married' (sc *in. matrimonium*). What is the word used for the woman marrying the man?

655. **ejus calamitate**, 'by any disaster to him.'

658. **se praesente**, abl. abs., 'in his own presence.'

**sortibus.** Notice the use of 'lots' for less important matters than 'to fight or not to fight.'

**consultum**, sc. *esse*, 'a consultation had been taken' (impers.).

## PAGE 28.

664. **Rhenum.** Notice the acc. with *proximi*, as with the prep. *prope*, 'next the Rhine.'

668. **maturius paulo ... postulabat.** Be careful to take this adverbial phrase with the following verb *deduxit*.

669. **in hiberna in Sequanos.** Cp. note, l. 43.

670. **citerior Gallia** = Cisalpine Gaul, i.e. the Gallic 'province' in the N. of Italy, which was under Caesar's jurisdiction as pro-consul: **ad conventus agendos**, 'to hold the assizes,' i.e. his judicial business in his province.

## PART II.

## PAGE 31.

1. *supra*, i.e. 'earlier in this book.' Caesar had merely mentioned the Aduatuci as being part of the confederacy of the Belgae, and as being able to furnish 29,000 armed men.

2. *hac pugna*. The recent battle in which Caesar had, with the greatest difficulty, defeated the Nervii. His army had been surprised: the battle was a regular *melée*, in which Caesar had saved the day by snatching a shield from a soldier and going into the fight himself, to encourage his centurions and men. It took place on the banks of the Sambre (*Sabis*), in the district made ever memorable by the famous British retreat from Mons (Aug. 1914), and was near Cambrai and Le Cateau.

5. *oppidum*. See Geographical Notes.

6. *altissimas*, 'very high.' *summus* is kept for the phrase implying 'the top'; in *summo monte* = 'on the top of the hill.'

## PAGE 32.

14. *iter*. The famous migration of the Cimbri and Teutons. See Introd. 'The Germans.'

20. *obitum*, i.e. their destruction by Marius.

21. *alias ... alias*, 'at one time ... at another.'

27. *vallo pedum XII*, 'with a rampart (of) twelve feet (in height).'

*in circuitu XV milium*, 'circumference (of) 15,000 (feet).'

Mr. Rice Holmes sees a difficulty here which seems to be no difficulty at all. He says *XV milium* is certainly wrong, because he takes it to mean 15 miles, and goes on to say that to insert *pedum* will not do either, 'because Caesar never reckons "miles" in terms of feet.' But Caesar is not reckoning miles. He is giving the dimensions of the rampart, first in height and then in length, using *pedum* in the first and understanding it in the second. He also describes the part

of the circumference of Vesontio where there is no river as 1600 feet (9, 228).

30. **vineis**. A *vinea* was a covered shed on wheels, in which the men could be brought up to the enemies' fortifications.

**agger**, an embankment or terrace on which the siege towers, etc., could be run up towards the enemies' walls.

**turrim**. The *tower*, a huge structure on wheels, built in 'stories,' high enough to overtop the walls. See l. 87.

31. **irridere, increpitare**, infin. used instead of indic. in narration. 'Historic' infin. Cp. 6, 89.

33. **ab tanto spatio**, 'at such a distance (away).'

36. **tantulae staturae**, 'of such small size.' Gen. of 'description.' Cp. 11, 241 and note. This would indicate that the legions which Caesar had brought with him were mostly Italians; later he levied several legions of Gauls. Both gen. and abl. of 'description' require an adj. You cannot say *vir fortitudinis*, 'a man of courage,' but *vir summae fortitudinis*.

37. **suorum**, 'their own.' As Caesar is writing about the Gauls he thinks of them as his natural (not the grammatical) subject, so 'their bodies' is *suorum corporum*.

### PAGE 35.

From this point the speeches are allowed to remain in Or. Obliqua, i.e. (1) the *statements* (or questions meant as statements) are put in *acc.* and *infin.* (2) All *clause* verbs are in subj. (3) All the *persons* become *third person*, *ego* and *nos* generally = *se, tu* and *vos* = *eum, eos*. (4) *Imperative* becomes *imperf. subj.* To understand it get hold of a speech in a newspaper in English, and see how 'reporting' in the 3rd person is done.

38. **contemptui**, 'a cause for complaint,' another 'dat. of the complement.'

48. **deprecari**, 'pray' (that something shall not happen), i.e. *ne ... despoliaret*.

49. **statuisset**, plup. subj. in Or. Obl. = fut. perf. in Or. Recta. Cp. I., l. 18 and note.

51. **suae virtuti.** The Germans, as we saw in the case of Ariovistus (and often see now), are always trying to impress other people with their valour—and yet they were surrendering without a fight!

52. **traditis armis,** ‘*if they gave up their arms.*’ The abl. abs., like *cum* + subj., gives *circumstances* of any kind—‘when,’ ‘if,’ ‘because,’ ‘since,’ etc.

54. **praestare,** infin. of the impers. *praestat*, ‘*it is better.*’

59. **aries,** ‘*battering ram.*’ See picture.

61. **in Nerviiis,** ‘*in the case of the Nervii.*’ After the destruction of the army of the Nervii he had spared the rest of the inhabitants and promised to protect them from injury (*B.G.* ii. ch. 28).

64. **facere** = *se facturos esse.* Cp. ‘I am coming immediately.’

#### PAGE 36.

75. **ne quam ... acciperent.** Contrast the conduct of Caesar on this occasion with that of the Germans in Belgian towns (in 1914).

**ante,** adverb, ‘*previously.*’

76. **deditione factā.** Take *crediderunt* first, ‘*thought that if they surrendered,*’ etc.

80. **subito,** ‘*hurriedly.*’

84. Caesar had evidently foreseen the possibility of treachery.

86. **ut a viris fortibus ... pugnari debuit,** ‘*as it was natural for brave men to fight...*’ Parse *pugnari* and notice, ‘*I ought to have done this*’ = *debui hoc facere*, not *fecisse*. (It is curious that ‘*ought*,’ which is really the past tense of ‘*owe*,’ has lost its ‘pastness,’ and is used as a present.)

87. **qui ... jacerent,** subj. expressing the ‘class’ or ‘kind’ of soldiers, *i.e.* ‘*men who were able to throw missiles,*’ etc.

90. **ad.** This prep. has lost its prepositional force, and here = ‘*as many as.*’ It merely qualifies the whole numeral phrase, which without it would be too precise, ‘four thousand men being killed.’



## PAGE 37.

94. **sectio.** A sale by auction (of captured or confiscated goods). Camp-followers in large numbers followed Roman armies. Some of them were large capitalists, and the captives were sold *en masse* to the highest bidder, who would sell the slaves individually or in lots afterwards. *sectio* in this sense originally = 'a dividing into lots.'

107. **supplicatio.** A general thanksgiving, lasting from one to fourteen days: that in honour of Caesar's victories in Gaul was therefore the longest known up to this time. Offerings were brought to the temples: the worshippers wore garlands, and sometimes the Senate gave a feast.

**nulli** for *nemini*, as *nullius* for *neminis*; notice its position at end of sentence for emphasis, and cp. l. 93, *nemo*.

## PART III.

## PAGE 39.

2. Pompey and Crassus Consuls, B.C. 55. With Caesar they formed the famous 'Triumvirate,' each helping the other two: see 26, 628 and note.

The **Usipetes** and **Tencteri**. See Geographical Notes.

8. **Suebi.** The tribe to which Ariovistus belonged. The 'Angli' are said by Tacitus to be a branch of the Suebi.

10. **pagos.** *pagus*, 'canton,' is a rather vague word for the divisions of the Germanic folk. 'Canton' is still the name for the divisions of Switzerland. Each canton was a more or less independent unit, as we see in the description of their arrangements for military service, a thousand men every year being furnished by each *pagus*. This thousand stayed at home the following year, and then was liable for service again.

This shows that German 'militarism' is not a growth of 40 years, or of 100 or 200, but is of the very life of the people. It was the same with our ancestors, but has been lost owing to our 'insularity.'

16. **agri**, gen. with *nihil*. When a 'quantity,' or 'amount,' is mentioned in Latin, the genitive must be used. Cp. below,

l. 25, *neque vestitus quicquam* = 'not any clothing': 'some truth' = *aliquid veri*. Remember that *plus, satis, parum, nimium*, etc., have to be used in this way. Cp. French *un peu de vin, pas de viande*.

18. **multum** and **maximam partem**, (adverbial) acc. of extent, 'nor do they live much (i.e. to any great extent) on corn.' What case is *frumento*, and why?

21. **libertate vitae**. This freedom, which, in intellectual matters, has been characteristic of many of the German races, tends to be crushed by the Prussian militarism, and has almost ceased to exist in practical matters. 'Paternal government' is the method in Germany.

**a pueris**, 'from boyhood.' N.B. the slight difference of expression between the English and the Latin.

**nullo officio aut disciplina**. Contrast l. 16 and note. *Nihil agri* = 'no land' (quantity), but *nullum officium* = 'no duty' (of any kind); 'trained by no duties or regular education.'

23. **immani ... magnitudine**. Cp. 11, 241 and note.

25. **vestitus ... quicquam**. Cp. l. 16, *nihil ... agri*. Observe the clothing of the Germans in the pictures, especially in that opposite p. 5. These pictures are of much later date than Caesar's book, and may indicate a change of fashion. Some of the Gauls in Caesar's time wore 'breeches,' and the Germans may have imitated them. Tacitus tells us that the wealthiest Germans 'are distinguished by clothing which fits tight and shows all the limbs.'

27. **laventur**. Parse carefully.

#### PAGE 40.

29. = *ut habeant (homines) quibus vendant, (ea) quae bello ceperint*.

31. **quo** = *quod*, 'because,' as usually after *quam*.

32. **quin etiam**, 'moreover.' What case is '*jumentis*,' and why?

34. **quae**, i.e. *jumenta*, 'horses which are bred in their own country.'

36. **summi ... laboris**, '(capable) of a great quantity of work.' Cp. 53, 281, note.

37. **equestribus proeliis**, abl. of 'place where,' '*in cavalry battles.*'

41. **ephippiis**, '*horse cloth,*' i.e. something to make it easier to *sit* the horse. The Romans used merely a cloth put over the horse's back. This was regarded as a great proof of 'slackness' or effeminacy by the Germans, so (l. 41) 'They (without a saddle), however few they may be, are ready to attack any number of cavalry using saddles (*ephippiatorum*).'  
See Illustrations.

43. **Vinum**. Caesar seems to have been misled by what he heard, i.e. by the fact of the Germans not using imported wine, into imagining them much more temperate than they were. Tacitus (writing more than 100 years later) says that they made a drink from barley and other grain, 'fermented into a certain resemblance to wine,' i.e. beer, and he gives very interesting particulars of their drinking customs in Chapters XXII. and XXIII. of the *Germania*, ending with these remarkable words, remarkable particularly because on the whole Tacitus compares the German habits of simplicity and frugality very favourably with the luxurious habits of Rome under the early Emperors: 'If you indulge their love of drinking by giving them as much as they want, they will be overcome with their own vices more easily than by the arms of the enemy.' It is interesting to recall the German behaviour in the 'Champagne' district in September, 1914.

47. 'A place in the sun,' we see, was an old desire of the Germans, and means 'to keep every one else out of it.'

48. **significari**, understand *putant*, '*they think that by this it is made clear.*'

49. **suam vim**, '*their prowess.*' *suus* here has its proper sense, 'belonging to the subject,' i.e. to the Suebi.

50. **unā ex parte**, '*on one side,*' i.e. to E. and N. N.B. the idiomatic use of *ex*, '*on the side of.*' Cp. *a in a tergo, a fronte, in the rear, in the front.*

**agri dicuntur**. Cp. p. 14, l. 311, and note.

51. **Ad alteram partem**, '*on the other side* (i.e. the south) *the Ubii come up to them,*' i.e. their neighbours are the Ubii.  
**captus**, noun. See vocabulary.

56. *Gallicis moribus*, dat. 'assimilated to Gallic customs.' Contrast with l. 21, where *disciplina* and *officio* are ablatives with *assuefacti*, 'trained in or by.'

## PAGE 42.

61. *In eadem causā*, 'in the same case.'

62. *diximus*, 'mentioned.'

71. *Germanos transire prohibebant*, 'tried to prevent the Germans crossing.' Always try to decide on a good translation of the imperfect; you have a choice as a rule between 'tried to do it,' 'used to do it,' i.e. 'did it as a habit,' 'began to do it,' and 'were doing it.' *N.B.* *prohibeo* with acc. and infin., the usual construction in Caesar and Cicero.

73. *vi contendere*, 'to effect their object by force.'

75. *reverti ... reverterunt*. Notice *revertor* and *revertor* in the same sense 'return' (intrans.) both in the same sentence.

78. *equitatu*, 'by means of their cavalry,' abl. of 'instrument.'

84. *certior fieret*, 'before the part of the Menapii ... could get to know.' *prius quam* is used with a subj. when something is mentioned which the subject of the sentence tries to prevent or anticipate. Contrast p. 26, l. 635, *prius quam ... pervenerunt*, 'before they (actually) reached the Rhine.'

## PAGE 43.

86. *copiis*, 'supplies,' not 'forces.'

89. *nihil his committendum*, 'that they ought to be told nothing,' lit. 'that nothing ought to be entrusted to them;' *his*, not the 'dat. of agent,' but the 'indirect object.' See note (1) (3).

95. *maturius quam consuerat*, 'earlier than was his custom.' *N.B.* *consuerat* = *consueverat*; the whole phrase is adverbial, and it is taken with the following verb, *proficiscitur*, not with the *occurreret*. Cp. 48, 203.

98. *invitadosque ... discederent*, 'and that they (i.e. the Germans) had been invited to leave the Rhine,' i.e. to settle in Gaul.

100. **fore parata**, 'would be found made ready by them' (i.e. by the Gauls).

104. **dissimulanda**. To remember the difference in meaning between *simulo* and *dissimulo*: *quod non est simulo, dissimuloque quod est*.

106. **equitatu imperato**. *N.B. impero tibi mensam* = 'I order a table from you, i.e. 'you receive the order to produce a table.' Thus, and thus only, can *impero* have a noun as subject in the passive, *mensa tibi a me imperatur*. When an *ut*-clause is used, the clause is the object in the act., the subject in the passive:

*tibi impero*  
*tibi imperatur* } *ut hoc facias*.

109. **ea loca ... quibus in locis**. Here the relative clause is complete. Caesar might have shortened it to *ea loca ... in quibus*.

#### PAGE 44.

113. **neque recusare ... quin contendat**, 'but do not shrink from fighting.' Cp. note on 5, 73.

116. **dicere, venisse**. *se*, the subject, is omitted with both these verbs. *N.B.* in Or. Obl. *se* is (generally) the person (or persons) speaking, *is* (or *ii*) the person spoken to. Notice how these two forms of 3rd person pronoun in Latin avoid the necessity of explanatory brackets: 'He (Mr. Jones) could not understand his (Mr. Smith's) remarks ...'

121. Notice the dread in which the Suebi were held, and compare a well-known saying of the Kaiser, 'We Germans fear God and nothing else in the world.'

125. **verum**, 'just' or 'reasonable.'

130. **Sueborum injuriis**. This might mean 'injuries done by the Suebi' or 'to the Suebi.' Which is it here? And see note on objective gen., 14, 300.

133. **post diem tertium**, 'two days later.' The Romans counted three days from (e.g.) Monday to Wednesday. Mr. Rice Holmes makes an excellent suggestion that it means 'at the end of the third day.'

139. Here we see Caesar's reasons for his subsequent harshness. He suspected that the Germans were asking for

delay in order to be able to get back their cavalry before it was necessary to fight.

## PAGE 45.

141. The Meuse and the Rhine. See Geographical Notes.

149. *ad eos equites*, 'to the cavalry which ...' (*is, ea, id*, used to introduce a rel. clause, generally = 'the ...')

152. *quorum si principes ...*, 'if their chiefs and senate should give them assurance on oath.' As often, *quorum* = *eorum*.

153. *eā condicione*. Why Abl.?

154. *ostendebant*, 'they declared.'

155. *daret*, 'he must give them ...' Other ways of translating are 'he ought to give them,' 'he was to give them,' 'they asked him to give them,' etc.; choose the best! it = *imperat.* in Or. Recta.

156. *illo pertinere*, 'pointed to the same intention,' i.e. to wait for the return of the cavalry; lit. 'that their cavalry might get back.'

161. *convenirent* = imperative.

166. *accessisset* = fut. perf. of Or. Recta, 'until he should have (had time to) come up.'

167. *At hostes*, etc. This long sentence has been simplified merely by the insertion of brackets to show the 'causal' clauses. Here is a shortened version of it:

*At hostes ubi ...*, 'but when the enemy saw our cavalry ...'

*quorum ...*, 'who numbered some 5000.'

*cum ipsi ...*, 'although they had only 800.'

(*quod ...*, 'because the (others) had not returned')

*nihil timentibus nostris ...* (abl. abs.), 'while our men were not anticipating any danger. ...'

(*quod ...*, 'because their envoys had only just left Caesar. ...')

*impetu facto ...*, 'they made an attack and threw our men into a panic.'

Notice that Caesar makes no attempt to conceal this disgraceful panic—800 Germans putting to flight 5000 of his cavalry. We must remember the cavalry were

Gauls, and many of them newly enrolled (see l. 106), and that they had a hereditary terror of the Germans.

Is it quite true that they had asked for this day for an armistice (l. 173)? They had asked for three days' truce, and he had not (definitely) granted it. Caesar is perhaps trying to explain away his action which follows.

## PAGE 46.

176. **suffossisque equis**, '*stabbing the horses from beneath.*' See illustration. It was a plucky thing to do, to get down on to the ground and stab charging horses.

185. **Hic cum** .... See introd. Hints on Translation.

195. **ultra**, adv. corresponding to the prep. *ultra*, '*beyond*'; '*beyond what would be expected,*' i.e. here '*unprovoked.*'

**Exspectare** is the verb noun (infin.). What case is it, and why?

196. **dum ... reverteretur**. Notice the difference between *dum* with the pres. indic. and *dum* with the subj. *dum ... revertitur* would mean '*while the cavalry were coming back,*' an actual fact; *dum reverteretur*, '*so as to give time for the cavalry to return.*' Cp. *prius quam* with subj. and note on l. 84.

## PAGE 48.

197. **summae dementiae**, '*an act (or proof) of utter madness.*' Cp. *summi laboris*, l. 36.

198. **quantum ... auctoritatis**. Cp. note, l. 16, '*how much prestige*' (i.e. power over the minds of the Gauls).

199. **consecuti essent**. Why subj.?

200. **quibus ... dandum existimabat**, '*and therefore he thought he ought to give them ...*'; *quibus*, '*to whom*' = '*to them therefore.*' Notice the use of the gerundive in both ways here: *ad consilia capienda*, gerundive attraction; *nihil spatii dandum*, gerundive expressing duty: cp. note (1).

203. Notice the use of **communicare** with *cum legatis*, not *legatis* in dat.: '*when he had made known his plan to the legates.*'

203. **ne quem .. praetermitteret.** This is a difficult phrase. It is often taken to explain '*consilio*,' '... his plan, which was not to let slip a single fighting day.' I think it much better to take it, as such adverbial clauses should regularly be taken, with the main verb which follows it, '*a most opportune thing happened to prevent him losing a single day.*' We may remember he had said 'it was madness to wait.' Cp. 2, 43 and 23, 553. If it explained *consilio* it would go closely with it. The sentence *balances* much better with a pause after *communicato*. Why would it be wrong (here) to translate *consilio ... communicato* '*having made known his plans*'?

208. **simul** indicates that two things are going to be mentioned. The first reason of their coming was what they alleged (*ut dicebatur*), namely, their desire to apologise for the attack of the previous day ; the second is merely Caesar's suggestion (possibly to excuse his own after-conduct) that they wanted to get some further concessions as to an armistice by deceit (*fallendo*). Is it likely, however, that they would deliberately have come to him in large numbers if their desire to apologise had not been a real one? It can hardly be doubted that Caesar was much to blame for what followed. Though he may have had severe provocation, he certainly acted with greater severity than seems to have been necessary. His conduct in this matter would be a good subject for an essay or debate : Was he justified or not?

209. **contra atque esset dictum**, '*contrary to what had been promised and to their own petition.*' What verb does *quod* go with?

212. **sibi oblatos**, '*that they had put themselves into his power*' (*sibi*). Cp. *se hostibus obtulit*, l. 191.

213. **ipse**, '*he in person led out the troops.*' As a rule his cavalry would advance first. On this occasion the cavalry, disgraced by their panic of the previous day, brought up the rear.

216. **Acie triplici institutā.** See note on 23, 557.

218. **possent.** Why subj. ?

221. **arma capiendi.** Notice the difference as compared with *consilii habendi* in previous line. What is the difference, and why is it? Cp. 26, 615 and note (1) (6).



222. **perturbantur**, 'are thrown into confusion (doubting) whether ... or ...' (-ne ... an).

## PAGE 49.

226. **qui** = *ii qui*.

232. **Germani**, i.e. the fighting men who were engaged with Caesar's infantry inside the camp amongst the huts and waggons. The Roman cavalry had got round behind them to pursue the flying crowd of non-combatants. Now the fighters, deprived of their leaders, who were in Caesar's camp, fled also.

235. **Deinde cum ... pervenissent**, 'afterwards when they reached the "confluence" of the Meuse and the Rhine.' This is very difficult to understand. See Geographical Notes.

237. **magno numero interfecto**. Be careful not to translate this 'having killed a great number.' Always translate abl. abs. *literally* first. Cp. in the next sentence *perpaucis vulneratis*.

240. **ex tanti belli timore**, 'after their fear of a war of such magnitude.' The clause *cum ... fuisset* explains the magnitude, 'the total number of the enemy having been 400,000.' This includes, of course, the whole population.

247. **libertatem**, i.e. leave to do as they had asked, stay under his power and protection.

251. **suis rebus**, 'for their own interests,' i.e. the interests of the subject of *timere*, *eos* (the Germans).

## PAGE 50.

254. **Accessit**. Notice this impersonal verb, 'there was added,' i.e. 'there was this additional reason....' When a verb stands at the beginning of a sentence try beginning with the introductory 'there,' e.g. *stabat in monte turris*, 'there stood a tower upon the hill.'

257. **proelio**. What case?

259. **Ad quos**, i.e. to the Sugambri, who were sheltering the escaped Usipetes.

262. **se ... sui**. Both refer to Caesar, the subject of *existimaret* and *postularet*, not to the speakers (the Sugambri).

**se invito**, 'against his will,' abl. abs.

## PAGE 53.

281. *neque ... suae neque populi R. dignitatis.* Cp. again note on I. 12. Again we have to understand a word with the gen. *suae ... dignitatis*, '*and he decided it was not compatible with his own dignity, or that of the Roman people.*' Cp. 48, 197.

283. The bridge must have been in the neighbourhood of Cologne (Colonia), where the Ubii had their homes. The river here is a quarter of a mile wide. See Geographical Notes.

287. *coepta erat.* Cp. 21, 504.

296. *hortantibus iis quos ...*, '*those urging them whom ...*,' i.e. at the suggestion of (those members of) the Tencteri and Usipetes whom ...

## PAGE 54.

315. *ut ...*, '*namely to ...*.' His objects had been attained : (1) he had inspired fear in the Germans; they had sent embassies and given hostages; (2) he had punished the Sugambri by devastating and burning their property; (3) released the Ubii from a 'state of siege.' He did not think it advisable to follow the Suebi into their mountain fastnesses.

## PART IV.

## PAGE 56.

2. *praesint.* Why subj.?

13. *in annos singulos*, '*for a year at a time.*'

15. *agri*, with *quantum*, '*they assign to the clans and families as much land as they think fit (quantum visum est) and where*' (they think fit).

18. *agriculturā*, abl. of the thing taken in exchange, '*lest they exchange war-eagerness for agriculture.*' It is really an abl. of 'instrument' or 'means'; that which is given or taken in exchange being regarded as the 'means' by which the exchange is made. Cp. the abl. of 'price.'

20. **potentioresque humiliores** ..., both *might* be either nom. or acc. When this is the case it is usually safe to take the first as the subject, the second as the object. Try if the other would make good sense.

We see in this chapter that the 'liberty' accorded to children (see Part III. ch. I.) was not also accorded to the people as a whole in every respect. 'Paternal' government (as well as 'militarism') is evident in these regulations about land. The customs of our own ancestors, who settled in Britain, were very similar.

25. **cum potentissimis**, short for *cum opibus potentissimorum*, as often in Latin.

## PAGE 57.

26. **quam latissime ... solitudines habere**. Cp. Part III. 45. Cp. from a Roman enemy's point of view the famous speech of Galgacus—a Caledonian chief—given by Tacitus in his life of the conqueror of Britain, *Agricola*,—describing the methods of imperial Rome

*Solitudinem faciunt, pacem appellant.*

33. **ut ... habeant**, 'so as to have (i.e. having) power of life and death.'

37. This failing to understand the difference between *meum* and *tuum* has been abundantly illustrated in the present war. Some German officers' diaries have admitted the disgraceful conduct of their army.

42. **qui ... profiteantur** (saying that) 'those who desire to follow him should "volunteer."' *profiteantur*, pres. subj. here = 'imperative.' *profiteor* is the usual word for 'to volunteer.' Cp. 45, 155.

45. **ex his**, i.e. 'of these who have volunteered.'

46. **his ... derogatur**, 'these lose credit'; i.e. 'credit is taken away from these.' What case is *his*? Cp. 17, 408. *omnium rerum*, 'in every respect,' a sort of obj. gen. with *fides*.

## GEOGRAPHICAL NOTES

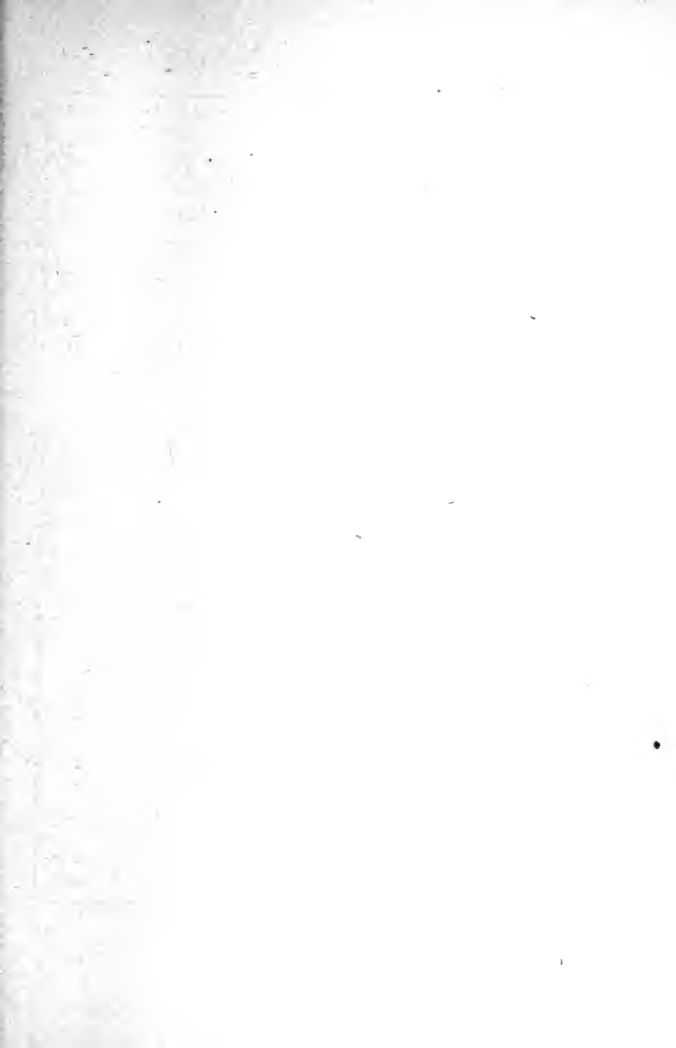
*(A Roman mile = about  $\frac{1}{16}$  less than an English mile, so that  
10 English = 11 Roman miles.)*

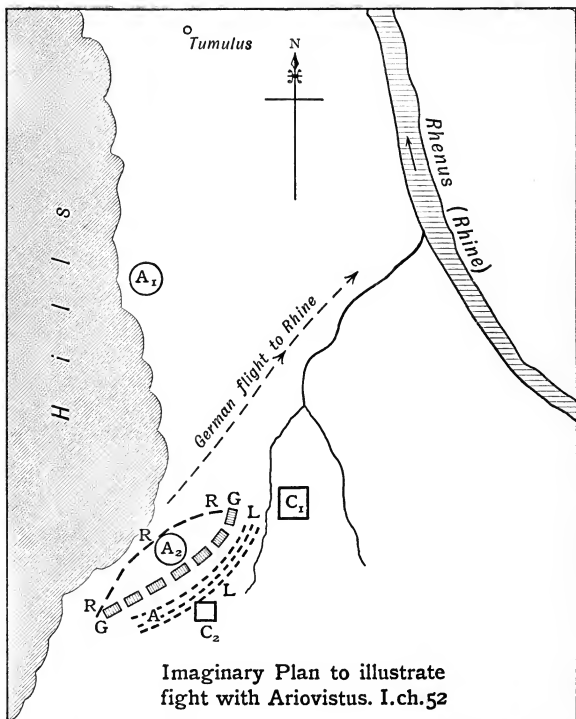
THE geography of Caesar's campaigns, as he left no maps, is often very obscure. He describes places picturesquely, but so concisely and with so few names that we often have not sufficient data to identify them. Taking these campaigns in order.

### PART I. ARIOVISTUS.

Having conquered the Helvetii at a place about 100 miles S.W. of Vesontio, Caesar heard that Ariovistus was making an effort to reach that place (ch. 38). The German king was, probably, somewhere near Strasbourg. Caesar determines to forestall him, and being somewhat nearer, by marching night and day, easily succeeds in doing so. After spending some days at Vesontio, where the strange panic narrated in ch. 39 took place, Caesar made a detour to avoid the difficult valley of the Doubs, and when he had marched over six days without a day's rest, learnt, on the seventh, that Ariovistus with his force, or rather host, was about twenty-four miles distant. Here begin our difficulties. Where was Caesar? Where was Ariovistus?

Ariovistus, marching with a whole host, including women and children in waggons, avoiding the hills, was advancing





$A_1$  = Ariovistus' first camp I.529

$A_2$  = „ second „

$C_1$  = Caesar's large camp

$C_2$  = „ smaller „

$L$  = Caesar's legionary troops

$A$  = „ Alarii

$G$  = German soldiers (7 tribes)

$R$  = German waggons & women

up the Rhine valley, where afterwards was a Roman road. Caesar hearing he was coming this way, and himself making a detour, possibly across the river Agnon and then westwards by Belfort or Montbeliard, to avoid mountains as much as possible, had got into the Rhine district, near Bâle, or north of it, near Mulhouse, and there encamped. When you read the story carefully, particularly the beginnings of chs. 43, 48, 49 and 53, you will see that Caesar and Ariovistus were probably some twenty miles apart. (We are not told whether Caesar was at the end of his march 'on the seventh day' when he heard where Ariovistus was. It looks as if this was before he reached his camping-ground, ch. 41.) There was a *tumulus*, possibly a burial mound, where the conference took place, in a considerable plain about half-way between them, Caesar's camp being about five or six miles from the river Rhine. Ariovistus now marched to a point six miles from Caesar, and pitched his camp, *sub monte*, at the foot of a hill (A1). Next day, coming along close to the hills, or possibly over them, he advances to a point two miles 'beyond Caesar' and encamps (A2), so as to be in a position to intercept supplies reaching Caesar from the West. Caesar replies by making his second camp, *castra minora*, about two-thirds of a mile beyond the enemy's. After the battle the Germans fled to the Rhine, 'five miles from the battlefield.'

What we want to find, then, is a district where the conditions are something like the imaginary plan given in this book. The usual explanations, which are very various, make the hill of Ariovistus' first camp one of the spurs of the Vosges, possibly the now famous Hartmansweilerkopf, near Cernay. The Vosges, however, is too far from the Rhine, and those who give this explanation have either to make the Rhine (ch. 53) mean the 'Ill,' or make the '5 miles' into 15 (or even 50). The matter cannot be settled until excavation reveals the trenches made for the camps. These and the

'tumulus' may well have been levelled for agricultural purposes or in making some of the modern railways or canals. A 'tumulus,' i.e. burial ground, of the 'longbarrow' type would just hold the members of the conference (ch. 43). The country to the W. and S.W. of Bâle looks from the maps as if it would meet the case. There are hills five or six miles from the Rhine. The site would suit Ariovistus' march along the Rhine valley, and give him a position W. of Caesar, from which he could intercept supplies reaching the latter from that side.

There is a slight contradiction in Caesar's account of the 'flight.' Ariovistus had stationed his waggons, with the women and children in them, so as to prevent the flight of his troops. Caesar, however, probably let them escape to the N.E. knowing that it would be easier to destroy the host at—or on its way to—the river. Moreover, the women in the waggons took part in the flight instead of hindering it as was their custom.

## PART II. THE OPPIDUM ADUATUCORUM.

So many attempts have been made to identify this stronghold that I have given up the matter as hopeless. The most generally accepted places are both on the Meuse, Namur (where the Sambre joins the Meuse) and Mt. Falhize, a little further down the river. It seems to me difficult to conceive Caesar describing a position, as in II. 29, without mentioning such an important river as the Meuse, if the town were protected by it as Vesontio was protected by the Doubs, I. 38. The story being an isolated one with no particular geographical connection with the rest of the campaign, I am not attempting to mark the position of this *oppidum* at all. We need only say that it was somewhere in the north of the Ardennes.



## PART III. THE USIPETES AND TENCTERI.

This presents one of the most interesting problems of Caesar's campaigns, and I do not think it out of place, even in an 'Elementary Classic,' to discuss the difficulties. Many of my readers perhaps are 'Scouts' and accustomed to study maps. In reading an account of a campaign, it is not sufficient to read the words and make mere *verbal* sense of them. You want really to follow the details. For instance, suppose you found in an English history, 'Harold marched from Yorkshire to Hastings in 3 days,' you might be satisfied with it as a statement making sense, but if you tried to work it out on a map, you would find it was an impossibility, and the sentence would have to be corrected somehow. If '3 days' is correct, then either 'Yorkshire' or 'Hastings' is wrong. The easiest way to emend it would be to read '13' or '30' days for '3.' Otherwise 'Yorkshire' would have to be altered to, say, 'London.' Similar difficulties constantly occur in reading Caesar. In Part I. we saw some of them.

The difficulties in Part III. are as follows, though the *words* are simple enough :

The German tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri—we will call them U. and T. in future—had crossed the Rhine in the territories of the Menapii (see map), and settled down for the winter of 56-55 B.C. in the Menapian territory, on the left bank, i.e. S., of the Rhine, turning out the owners. The U. and T., or part of them, afterwards, *by invitation of the Gauls*, wandered southwards (ch. 6) into the territory of the Eburones and Condrusi. Caesar, hearing of this, marched across N. France, probably up the Sambre (Sabis), and when he reached a place a few days' march from 'where he heard the Germans were,' received an embassy from them asking that they might be allowed to settle in the district they had

reached. Caesar's reply was that they must leave Gaul and recross the Rhine, but might be allowed to settle in the territory of the Ubii, who like themselves had complained of pressure from the Suebi, and he would give orders to the Ubii to this effect (ch. 8). He goes on to a spot twelve miles from the enemy, when envoys arrive begging him not to advance any further. He refuses. They then ask him to let them send ambassadors to the Ubii, *expecting them back in three days*. Caesar now says he will content himself with no further advance than four miles, which is necessary to put him in reach of water. He thinks the German wish for three days' respite was due to their expecting the return of the greater number of their cavalry, who had been sent to forage across the Meuse, in the country of the Ambivariti. The unprovoked attack, made by the German cavalry on Caesar's Gallic cavalry the same day, brought matters to a climax (ch. 12). On the following day come the events of chs. 13, 14 and 15, the coming of the U. and T. chiefs to apologise, their detention by Caesar, and his attack on the U. and T. camp, ending in the destruction of the whole host in the river (evidently not more than one day's flight from the camp) *cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent*.

This is a perfectly simple story if you don't use a map. When, however, you try to follow the events properly, you find it becomes almost as difficult as our statement about Harold. If they were near the present confluence of the Meuse and the Rhine (or rather Waal), they would be (1) over 100 miles from the Ubii; (2) about the same distance from the Eburones and Condrusi, whose country they were said to have reached.

The chapter we have omitted, ch. 10 (supposed now not to have been written by Caesar, and 'corrupt' in its text), states that the 'Meuse receives a part of the Rhine, which is called the Waal—*Vacalus* or *Vahalis*.' If this is the case,

the Meuse cannot strictly be said to have 'a confluence' with the Rhine at all.

Now how are we to reconcile these difficulties? The locality of the battle must have been

- (1) near enough to the Meuse for the U. and T. to expect their cavalry back in two or three days from the other side;
- (2) near enough the Ubii (across the Rhine near Cologne) for an answer to be got from them in three days;
- (3) near a *confluens* called *Mosae et Rheni*.

Unless, also, Caesar's words about the U. and T. having reached the territories of the Eburones and Condrusi only refer to advanced bodies, the battle must have been somewhere in the N. of the Ardennes. Some of the explanations are as follows:

(a) Mr. Rice Holmes' way out of the difficulty, though he gives it reluctantly, is to take *confluentem Mosae et Rheni* as containing a mistake of *Mosae* for *Mosellae*, and he puts the battle near Coblentz. (Coblentz = *confluentes*.)

The objection to that view is that Coblentz is too far from the Meuse to satisfy (1) above, and it is difficult to account for the change of name.

(b) Another explanation is that the mistake is in the word *Rheni*, supposing the *confluens* to be that of the Meuse with some other river, e.g. the Ourthe or the Roer. These explanations, however, take one too far from the Rhine.

(c) A third is that *Mosae* is the word which has crept in by mistake, and that the confluence is that of the Rhine with some other river, e.g. the Erft, about fifteen miles N. of Cologne. This seems the most satisfactory so far, but does not account for the word *Mosae*.

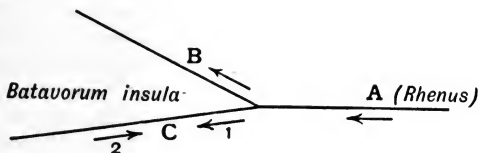
(d) I am venturing on another explanation which involves

no violence to the text as do (a), (b) and (c), but may be accused of doing violence to the usually accepted meaning of the words concerned.

It will be noticed that my map gives the Rhine a different course from its present one. It is impossible to find out *exactly* what its course was, but one thing seems absolutely certain, that it was *different* from what it is now. I have taken as my authority Rev. S. Baring-Gould's *Book of the Rhine*, which was not written with any design of proving or disproving any theories about Caesar's campaigns. Mr. Baring-Gould, who, I presume, was following geographers and geologists, says that the Rhine used to divide into two streams at the modern Wesel, the southern branch flowing through Xanten, Cleves and Nimeguen. This is the branch known to Tacitus as the Waal (Vahalis or Vacalus). The two streams thus form 'the 'Insula Batavorum,' still called 'Betuwe.' The Waal or Vahalis was, apparently, not known to the Romans by this name until long after Caesar. Tacitus speaks of *both* branches as the Rhenus in his earlier works, the *Germania* and the *Histories*, thus making his descriptions of the war with Civilis very confusing. It is only in his last work, the *Annals*, that he mentions the southern arm as being called by the inhabitants the Vahalis. These are his words (*Annals*, ii. 6): 'The Rhine, remaining in one channel, or embracing some islands of no great size, divides into two streams at the beginning of the Batavian land, preserving its name and the violence of its course, where it flows past Germany (*i.e.* in the northern arm); the other branch, on the Gallic side, being wider, slower and with abundant flow. Changing its name, it is now called Vahalis by the inhabitants. Soon this name is changed for *Mosa* (Meuse), and it empties with immense mouth into the same ocean (as the northern arm).' The words in Caesar, *B.G.* iv. 10, *Mosa, parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur*

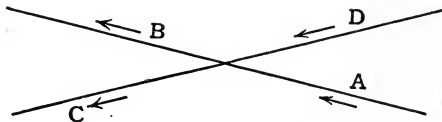
*Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavorum*, were possibly written about the same time as the *Annals*. It is possible that Tacitus here gives a clue to our difficulties. This southern branch of the Rhine was sometimes called Rhine, sometimes Mosa, and later—to avoid confusion—Waal (there is still, I understand, great confusion in the names of the branches of the Rhine). In Julius Caesar's time, it may well have been known here as *Mosa*, because it joins up with the Meuse later on, and bears that name after the junction.

What I would suggest, therefore, is that *confluentem Mosae et Rheni* may mean the place where the Meuse (*i.e.* the Waal) and the Rhine meet *as on a map*. The question is whether *confluens* can possibly be used in this sense. We are discussing, be it remembered, a military not a merely geographical question. Here are three streams (possibly four).



What does it matter to a military writer describing this position whether *C* (the Mosa or Vahalís) flows as in (1) or (2)? It is a place where streams flow *side by side* even if they do not flow *together*. There being no single word in Latin for a 'fork' of this kind, *confluens* seems a natural word to use. Latin is so full of words used in 'converse' senses that one more or less need cause no surprise. Going no further than river nomenclature, we find *caput* = 'source' and 'mouth,' *altus* = 'high' and 'deep,' and *fluo* itself = 'flow' and 'float' (as a boat). Moreover, if the dividing of the

streams is put correctly at Wesel, that is where the Lippe (Luppia) also comes in, so that we get streams like this



*D* being the Lippe. It is apparent from Tacitus (*Hist.* iv. 12, etc.) that the later Roman headquarters, *Vetera Castra* (the modern Birten) was quite close to the head of the Batavian island, and this confirms Mr. Baring-Gould's assertion.

Tacitus again helps a little. The southern branch, the 'Vahalis,' he says, is slower, wider and very abundant (*affluens*). It is quite possible that, in comparison with the northern branch, it may have given the appearance of flowing in the opposite direction as *C2* above; and, indeed, it is possible that the action of the tides, or of the rainfall in the Meuse basin, may actually cause it to do so at times. Anyway there seems no difficulty in Caesar accepting this place as *confluens Mosae et Rheni* on the report of his cavalry officers. He was not present himself at the destruction of the U. and T.

This destruction would thus come into the story in an intelligible manner. I am supposing:

(1) that the Germans who reached the territories of the Eburones were advanced bodies, not settlers, the main body being still in Menapian territory;

(2) that the negotiations and battle took place near the river Niers, the most northern tributary on the right bank of the Meuse, and that this river was where Caesar wanted to be *aquationis causa*. The Germans after the battle fled either

northwards or eastwards (according to the exact position of the battle). Reaching the Rhine and seeing that if they did not cross at or above the fork they would have two large rivers to cross instead of one, they made a desperate attempt (*reliqua fuga desperata*) and perished.

That the events occurred somewhere in this district seems proved by ch. 15, where the envoys and chiefs begged Caesar that they might remain with him rather than be at the mercy of those whose lands they had ravaged, *i.e.* the Menapii. We are expressly told that their wanderings south were by invitation and were to assist the Gauls—probably against Caesar.

The rest of the events now fit in well enough. Caesar moves southwards along the Rhine towards the Ubii, who were persuading him to cross the river. Determining to make a bridge, he surveys the river as he goes, and decides to build it probably a little north of Cologne. While the building is in progress, the U. and T. cavalry, which had taken no part in the fight, escape across the Rhine to their friends the Sugambri. It being part of his purpose in building the bridge to punish this tribe, he constructs it as near as possible to their territory, but in that of the Ubii.

The account of the building of the bridge is omitted in this book. We should, however, bear in mind some of the difficulties in building it. The Rhine at Cologne is a quarter of a mile wide, at Coblenz about 350 yards. The depth is 5 to 10 feet. Some seventy to one hundred sets of piers would therefore be required to span the river. Each of these would require six to ten tree trunks, and there would be an enormous amount of timber used for the roadway. We see that Caesar's soldiers must have been 'handy men' to cut the timber and build the bridge within ten days.

## PART IV.

The geography of this part depends on the preceding. The second bridge was a 'little above the first.' It is generally taken as being a little below Coblenz. It took even less time to build than the former bridge. Part of this one was allowed to remain, 200 feet of it (*i.e.* about one-fifth) being cut down at the German side, and a tower erected to guard the end.



# INDEX TO WORDS AND CONSTRUCTIONS MENTIONED IN THE NOTES

*Reference is to page and line of text ; for abbreviations  
see Vocabulary.*

- a* or *ab*, with agent, 2, 23 ; *a pueris*, 39, 21 ; *ab tanto spatio*, 32, 33.
- abl.* abs., 1, 8 ; 13, 274, 278 ; 35, 52 ; 49, 237.  
of description, 11, 241.  
thing exchanged, 56, 18.  
time when, 22, 538.
- acc.* double, 8, 143.
- accedit*, 50, 254.
- acies triplex*, 23, 557 ; 48, 216.
- ad*, with num., 36, 90.  
*ad alteram partem*, 40, 51.
- adj.* for gen., 10, 188.
- adverbial phrases*, 2, 43 ; 13, 278 ; 23, 553 ; 48, 203.
- agger*, 32, 30.
- alarum*, 24, 591.
- alias*, 32, 21.
- alius*, 12, 248.
- altissimus*, 31, 6.
- amplius*, 11, 227.
- Angli*, 39, 8.
- assuefacio*, 39, 21 ; 40, 56.
- audiens dicto*, 12, 267.
- Cimbri*, 7, 128.
- coepi*, 21, 504 ; 53, 287.
- cohors, praetoria*, 14, 325.
- communico*, 48, 203.
- comparison* (shortened), 56, 20.
- conditional sentences, subj.*, 19, 448.  
future, 1, 18 ; 14, 322.
- consilium*, 12, 269.
- contra atque*, 48, 209.
- conventus*, 28, 670.
- Crassus*, 26, 628.
- cum* + subj., 6, 92 ; 15, 345 ; 17, 395.  
+ indic., 10, 193 ; 14, 306.
- dat.* with *audiens*, 12, 267.  
with *eripio*, etc., 17, 408 ; 57, 46.  
with *bellum infero*, 9, 165.  
person affected, 1, 14.  
complement, 7, 106 ; 18, 432.  
with gerundive, Note (1).
- debeo*, 36, 86.
- detraho*, 16, 369.
- dissimulo*, 43, 104.
- duco*, 27, 645 ; 11, 224.
- dum*, with subj., 46, 196.

*eo*, 16, 370 ; 24, 603.  
*ephippia*, 40, 41.  
*eques*, 16, 379.  
*ex*, 9, 168 ; 24, 586 ; 40, 49 ;  
 49, 240.  
*expeditus*, 26, 629.

fearing, verbs of + *ne*, 10, 211.  
 + *ut*, 12, 264.  
*fore*, 12, 267 ; *fore ut*, 16, 358.  
*fueraut*, 1, 11.  
 fut. and fut. perf., 1, 18 ;  
 5, 64 ; 14, 322.  
 fut. part., 9, 170 ; 14, 318.

*Gallia*, 1, 1 ; *citerior*, 28, 670.  
 gen. of description, 32, 31.  
 of 'mark,' etc., 48, 197 ;  
 40, 36 ; 53, 281.  
 with *medius*, 8, 137.  
 objective, 14, 300 ; 44,  
 130.  
 of quantity (partitive), 5,  
 67 ; 39, 16 ; 56, 15.  
 gerund and gerundive, see  
 Note (1).

*illo*, 45, 156.  
 imperative fut., 10, 193.  
 imperf. indic., 42, 71.  
 subj., 16, 364 ; 45, 155,  
 161.  
*impero*, acc. object, 43, 106.  
 intr., 5, 61.  
 impers. verbs, 7, 130 ; 9, 186 ;  
 10, 211.  
 avoidance of, 14, 311.  
*in*, 'in case of,' 21, 519 ; 35, 61.  
*annos singulos*, 56, 13.  
 indirect question, 13, 274 ;  
 48, 221.  
 infin., historical, 6, 89 ; 32, 31.

*inter se*, 1, 9.  
*interdico*, 21, 498.  
*ita ... ut*, 24, 612.

*maturrime*, 7, 130.  
 moon (the new), 24, 588.  
*multus*, 21, 518 ; 39, 18.

*ne*, 11, 218 ; 23, 553 ; 36, 74 ;  
 48, 203.  
*necne*, 24, 586.  
*Nervii*, battle with, 31, 2.  
*Noricum*, 27, 644.  
*nulli = nemini*, 37, 107.

*offero*, 46, 191 ; 48, 212.  
*opus est*, 16, 373.  
 or. obl. pronouns, 44, 116.  
 rules, p. 28.

*pagus*, 10, 204 ; 39, 10.  
*passus*, 17, 384.  
 perf. (compound), 19, 465.  
 shortened, 9, 180 ; 13, 290.  
*per fidem*, 20, 494.  
*persuadeo*, 13, 278.  
*phalanx*, 26, 619.  
*pilum*, 26, 615.  
*post*, 44, 133.  
 prepositional phrases, 2, 43.  
 plup. (frequency), 22, 548.  
 subj., 35, 49 ; 45, 166.  
*praefecti*, 12, 244.  
*praestat*, 35, 54.  
*prius ... quam*, 19, 443 ; 26,  
 635.  
 with subj., 42, 84.  
*profiteor*, 57, 42.  
*prohibeo*, 42, 71.  
*propterea quod*, 6, 99.  
*proximus*, 28, 664 ; 14, 319.

*quam* + superl., 14, 320 ; 57, 26.  
*quin*, 5, 74 ; 7, 125 ; 21, 510 ;  
 44, 113.

*quod*, 'as for,' 10, 190 ; 14, 311 ;  
 18, 438.

*quod si*, 13, 281 ; 19, 463 ;  
 20, 468.

*quo* after *quam*, 40, 31.

relative, 19, 457 ; 43, 109.

*repraesento*, 14, 319.

*revert*, 1, 11 ; 42, 75.

*sectio*, 37, 94.

*servilis tumultus*, 13, 288.

*si qui*, 22, 547.

*simul*, 48, 208.

*sortes*, 24, 584 ; 27, 658.

*sub*, 22, 529 ; 36, 73.

subj., 'alleged reason,' 12,  
 249 ; 15, 332.

causal, 9, 183.

'class' with *qui*, 36, 87.

'deliberative,' 13, 277.

depending on subj. 9, 172.

indirect question, 13, 274.

in or. obl., p. 28.

superlative with *quisque*, 5, 62 ;  
 and see *quam*.

supine, 1, 3.

*supplicatio*, 37, 107.

*suus*, 20, 484 ; 32, 37 ; 40, 49 ;  
 49, 251.

'that of,' 1, 12 ; 6, 76.

*tribuni militum*, 12, 244.

'triumvirate,' 39, 2.

*turris*, 32, 30.

*ultra*, 16, 360 ; 46, 195.

*urbs*, 12, 245.

*usu* (ex), 24, 586.

*ut ... neque* (consequence), 8,  
 157.

*ut ... non* (final), 22, 537.

*ut* (explanatory), 17, 404 ; 54,  
 315.

*Veleda*, 24, 583.

*vinea*, 32, 30.

*volo*, 8, 143 ; 19, 446.

wine, 40, 43

## VOCABULARY

It is hoped that this vocabulary will help to show you by a few examples that words, in Latin as in our own and other languages, are *tools* which have been licked into their present shapes—and meanings—by many generations of tongues. It is hoped that perhaps one member of a class will occasionally try to see how the changes, whether in meaning, as in *e.g. supplicium* or *commeatus*, or in form, as in *dubito*, have come about. The notes in square brackets [...] show derivations, or kindred words, and English derivatives, the latter often making it easy to remember some Latin stem, which might otherwise be confused, as in ‘tempor-al’ or ‘fict-ion.’ Parallel or ‘cognate’ forms, *i.e.* the same word in a different shape, are given in English in black type, as **fish** (=piscis), or **foot** (=pes). This may help you to understand that though many English words are derived from Latin (generally through French) the language in itself grew up side by side with Latin, as a member of the same family, but independent of it.

Principal parts are not given in regular words of first conjugation as *am-o*, *-āre*, *-āvi*, *-atum*, except where they are liable to be confused with other conjugations, as *spolio*. When the meanings differ considerably, they are separated by semicolons. References to text are given thus, 12, 260=page 12, line 260. Long vowels are generally marked thus, *cēdo*, short ones only for special reasons.

Words which require a dative (*e.g. placeo*) generally have this fact suggested by the first meaning given. Such verbs are not transitive as in English.

Where a verb has two hyphens the second shows where the infin. ending is to come.

## ABBREVIATIONS

The abbreviations used in notes and vocabulary are as follows :

abl., ablative.	indic., indicative.
abs., absolute.	infin., infinitive.
acc., accusative.	interrog., interrogative.
act., active.	intr., intransitive.
adj., adjective.	irreg., irregular.
adv., adverb.	l., line.
<i>B.G.</i> = Caesar's book, 'de Bello Gallico.'	masc., masculine.
com., common (either masc. or fem.).	neg., negative.
comp., comparison or comparative.	neut., neuter.
conj., conjunction or conjugation.	num., numeral.
contr., contrast.	obj., object or objective.
cp., compare.	opp., opposite.
dat., dative.	Or. obl., Oratio obliqua.
def., defective.	p., page.
dep., deponent.	part., participle.
dim., diminutive.	pass., passive.
distrib., distributive.	perf., perfect.
<i>e.g.</i> , for example.	pers., person.
fem., feminine.	pl. or plur., plural.
Fr., French.	plup., pluperfect.
freq., frequentative.	pos., positive.
fut., future.	p.p.p., past participle passive.
gen., genitive.	prep., preposition.
<i>i.e.</i> , that is ( <i>id est</i> ).	pres., present.
imperat., imperative.	pron., pronoun.
imperf., imperfect.	<i>q.v.</i> ( <i>quod vide</i> ), which see.
impers., impersonal.	rel., relative.
inc., inceptive.	sc., understand (a word omitted).
indec., indeclinable.	subj., subjunctive.
indef., indefinite.	sup. or superl., superlative.
	tr. or trans., transitive.

## VOCABULARY

**a** or **ab**, prep. with abl., *from*; *by* (with *agent* after passive verbs).

Often in phrases expressing (a) distance, *ab tanto spatio*, *at such a distance off*; (b) direction, *ab dextro cornu*, *on the right wing*.

**ab-do**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, verb 3, *hide, put away* (with 'in' and acc.).

**ab-ic-io** or **ab-jic-io**, -ere, ab-jēci, abjectum, verb 3, *throw away*. [*ab, jacio, cp. abject.*]

**ab-sens**, gen. -sentis, adj., *absent*. [*pres. part. of*

**ab-sum**, -esse, ā-fui (ab-fui), verb irreg., *to be away, absent or distant*.

**ac=atque**, conj., *and* (joining together two words which are closely connected); also in comparative phrases, *idem atque, the same as ...*; *contra atque, differently from ...*

**ac-cēd-o**, -ere, accessi, accessum, verb 3, *go near, approach*; also as *impers.*, *accedit = it is added, i.e. there is an additional reason ...* [*ad, cedo, cp. access.*]

**accīd-o**, -ere, accīdi, verb 3, *happen, occur* (with dat. of person).

[*ad, cado, cp. accident.*]

**ac-cip-io**, -ere, accēpi, accep-tum, verb 3, *receive; hear* (news).

[*ad, capio, cp. accept.*]

**ac-clīvis**, -e, adj., *sloping* (upwards). [*ad, clivus, a hill.*]

**accūrāt-ius**, adv. comp., *more* (or too) *carefully, exactly*.

[*accūrātus from cūr-o.*]

**acerv-us**, -i, masc., 2, *a heap, pile*.

**aci-ēs**, -ei, fem., 5, *line of battle*. A. triplex, see note on 23, 557.

**ācri-ter**, adv., *keenly, fiercely*. [*adj., ācer.*]

**ad**, prep. with acc., *to; at; near; to complete, to suit; in answer to, with gerund, etc., for the purpose of*.

**ad-aequ-o**, verb 1, *to make equal; to equal, to reach* (the level of) (with acc.).

[*aequ-us.*]

**ad-am-o**, verb 1, *to love violently, covet*.

**ad-dūc-o**, -ere, adduxi, adductum, verb 3, *bring, induce* (followed by 'ut' and subj.).

**ad-equit-o**, verb 1, *to ride up*.  
[ad, eques.]

**ad-fero**, see **affero**.

**ad-hib-eo**, -ēre, adhibui, adhibitum, verb 2, *bring, call in, summon, employ*.  
[ad, habeo.]

**adit-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *approach, access; excuse*. [ad, eo.]

**ad-orior**, -oriri, -ortus, verb dep. 4, *attack* (with acc.).

**ad-sum**, -esse, -fui, verb irreg., *be present, at hand*.

**ad-vent-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *arrival, approach*.  
[ad, venio, cp. advent.]

**advers-us**, (1) -a, -um, adj., *opposite, unfavourable*.  
(2) prep. with acc., *against*.  
[ad, verito, cp. adversary.]

**Aduatūc-i**, -orum, 2, a German tribe, living near the Meuse.

**adulescen-s**, -tis, com., 3, *young person* (i.e. of military age, 17-40).  
[adolesco, *grow up*.]

**aedifici-um**, -i, neut., 2, *house, building*: [from

**aedific-o**, verb 1, *to build*.  
[aedes, facio.]

**Aedu-i**, -orum, 2, a tribe in centre of Gaul.

**Aedu-us**, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to the Aedui*.

**aequi-tas**, -tātis, fem., 3, *equality, fairness, contentment*.

**aequ-o**, verb 1, *to make equal*.

**aequ-us**, -a, -um, adj., *equal, level; fair, just; contented*.

**aest-ās**, -ātis, fem., 3, *summer*.  
[cp.

**aest-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *heat, hot weather*.

**af-fero**, afferre, attuli, allātum (or ad-lātum), *bring; allege*.  
[ad, fero.]

**af-fic-io**, -ere, affēci, affectum, verb 3, *to affect* (a person in any way); *afficere eum timore, to make him afraid*.

**āger**, agri, masc., 2, *land*; plur., *country, territory*.

**agger**, -is, masc., 3, *mound, dyke*. [ad, gero, *pile up*.]

**ag-men**, -minis, neut., 3, *line of march, army on the march* (i.e. in column); *novissimum agmen, the rear*: [from

**ag-o**, -ere, ēgi, actum, verb 3, *put or keep in motion, move, drive, do*; (intrans.) *make arrangements, treat*. [cp. action.]

**agricultūr-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *tillage of the soil, agriculture*.  
[ager, colo.]

**alacri-tas**, -tātis, fem., 3, *eagerness, keenness*. [adj., *alacer*.]

**alāri-i**, -ōrum, masc., 2, *soldiers on the wings* [ala], i.e. *auxiliary troops* (slingers, archers, etc.).

**alias**, adv., *at another time*.  
*alias ... alias, at one time ...*  
*at another.* [alius.]

**aliēn-us**, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to another or others.* [alius.]

**aliquamdiu**, adv., *for some time*: [from

**aliqui**, **aliqua**, **aliquod**, adj., *some.*

**aliquis**, **aliquid**, pron., *someone, something.*

**aliquot**, indeclinable adj., *some (in number), several.*

**ali-us**, -a, -ud, adj. (gen. *alius*), *other, different*; *alius alium (etc.), each other*; *alii ... alii, some ... others*; *alii alio fugiunt, some flee one way, some another.*

**Allobrog-es**, -um, 3, a Gallic tribe (east of the Rhone) defeated by Q. Fabius Maximus B.C. 121, and again in B.C. 61 by Pomptinus.

**al-o**, -ere, **alui**, **altum**, verb 3, *nourish, keep.*

**alter**, -a, -um (gen. *alterius*), adj., *the one, the other* (used instead of 'alius' when only two people or lots are spoken of), *second.*

**altitūd-o**, -inis, fem., 3, *height, depth*: [from

**alt-us**, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep.*

**Ambivarit-i**, -orum, a Gallic tribe (between Scheldt and Meuse).

**āmenti-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *madness.* [a, mens.]

**amiciti-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *friendship*: [from

**amic-us**, -a, -um, adj. and noun, 2, -i, *friendly, friend.* [am-o.]

**ā-mitt-o**, -ere, **amīsi**, **amissum**, verb 3, *lose, let slip.*

**amn-is**, -is, masc., 3, *a river.*

**amplitud-o**, -inis, fem., 3, *size, extent, importance.*

**amplius**, comp. adv., *more, more than, upwards of*: superl. **amplissime**, *most generously*: [from

**ampl-us**, -a, -um, adj., *large, important, extensive.*

**an**, conj., *or, with second alternative in questions, utrum ... an, -ne ... an.*

**angusti-ae**, -arum, fem., 1, *a defile, narrow place; difficulties.*

[angustus, adj., *narrow.*]

**animad-vert-o**, -ere, -verti, -ver-sum, verb 3, *notice, observe*; with acc. or acc. and infin. [animum, adverto.]

**anim-us**, -i, masc., 2, *mind, courage*; pl., *spirits, courage.*

**ante**, adv., and prep. with acc., *before*; with 'quam,' conj., *before.*

**antēā**, adv. = ante, *before.*

**ante-cēd-o**, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, verb 3, *go before, precede, go on ahead.*



**antiqu-us**, -a, -um, adj., *ancient, old, i.e. belonging to former times.* [ante.]

**apert-us**, -a, -um, adj., *open, (of country) easy to march over.* [aperio.]

**apert-e**, adv., *openly.*

**appell-o**, verb 1, *to call.*

**appet-o**, -ere, -ii, -itum, verb 3, *to desire, make for.*  
[ad, peto, cp. appetite.]

**ap-propinqu-o**, verb 1, *approach get near.* [ad, propinquo.]

**apud**, prep. with acc., *at, near, among; in the eyes of; (often = 'chez' in French). i.e. at the house of ...*

**arbitri-um**, -i, neut., 2, *judgment, authority, power.*

**arbitr-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *to judge, consider, think.*  
[arbiter, judge, cp. arbitration.]

**arcess-o**, -ere, -īvi, -itum, verb 3, *send for, call in.*  
[trans. form of ac-cedo, ar=ad.]

**ari-es**, -ētis, masc., 3, *a ram, battering ram.*

**Ariovist-us**, -i, 2, *a German king (of the Suebi).*

**arm-a**, -ōrum, neut., 2, *arms, weapons.*

**arm-o**, verb 1, *to arm; armāt-i, armed men.*

**arroganter**, adv., *boastfully, arrogantly, tyrannically.*

**arroganti-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *arrogance.*

[both from adj. arrogans, *taking too much upon himself*; ad, rogo.]

**Arvern-i**, -orum, *a Gallic tribe (in south of France), defeated by Q. Fabius Maximus, B.C. 121.*

**arx**, arcis, fem., 3, *citadel, stronghold.*

**assidu-us**, -a, -um, adj., *continuous, unremitting.*  
[ad, sedeo.]

**assuē-fac-io**, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, verb 3, *to accustom, make accustomed, train.*

**atque**=ac.

**at-ting-o**, -ere, attigi, attactum, verb 3, *touch, reach.*  
[ad, tango.]

**at-tribu-o**, -ere, -i, attribūtum, verb 3, *assign, give out.*  
[ad, tribuo.]

**at**, *but, yet, at any rate.*

**auctori-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *influence, authority.*  
[auctor from augeo.]

**auct-us**, -a, -um, adj., *powerful.*  
[augeo.]

**aud-eo**, -ere, ausus sum, verb semi-dep. 2, *dare, have the audacity ...*

**aud-io**, -ire, -ivi, -itum, verb 4, *hear, hear about, with acc.; dicto audiens = obedient. (See note, 12, 267.)*

**aug-eo**, -ere, auxi, auctum,  
verb 2, *to enlarge, increase*  
(trans.). [cp. auction.]

**aut**, conj., *either, or*, aut ... aut.

**autem**, conj., *but, moreover*  
(not first in sentence).

**auxili-um**, -i, neut., 2, *help,*  
*aid, remedy.*

**avāriti-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *greed,*  
*covetousness.*

[avārus, adj., *greedy.*]

**av-is**, -is, fem., 3, *bird.*

[cp. aviation.]

**av-us**, -i, masc., 2, *grand-*  
*father.*

**barbar-us**, -a, -um, adj.,  
*foreign* (as opp. to Roman),  
*foreigner, barbarian*; gener-  
ally as plur. noun, barbar-i,  
-ōrum, *the natives.*

**bellicōs-us**, -a, -um, adj., *war-*  
*like.*

**bell-o**, verb 1, *fight, carry on*  
*war*: [both from

**bell-um**, -i, neut., 2, *war.*

**benefici-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a*  
*kindness, benefit, service.*  
[bene, facio.]

**bidu-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a space*  
*of two days.*

[bis, dies, cp. (as to forma-  
tion) fort-night.]

**brev-is**, -e, adj., *short*: [hence

**brevi-tas**, -tātis, fem., 3, *short-*  
*ness, small stature.*

**cād-o**, -ere, cecidi, cāsum,  
verb 3, *fall, drop* (opp. to  
caedo, *to fell*).

**calami-tas**, -tātis, fem., 3,  
*disaster.*

**capio**, capere, cēpi, captum,  
verb 3, *take, capture, take up*  
(arma); c. consilium, *form*  
*a plan*: [hence

**captiv-us**, -i, masc., 2, *a*  
*prisoner.*

**capt-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *power of*  
*comprehension, notion*; ut  
est captus Germanorum,  
*according to German notions.*

[capio.]

**caput**, capit-is, neut., 3, *head*;  
*source or mouth* (of a river);  
*person* (so many 'heads,'  
e.g. of captives).

[cp. capital.]

**car-o**, carn-is, fem., 3, *flesh,*  
*meat.* [cp. carrion.]

**carr-us**, -i, masc., 2, *wagon.*  
[cp. carriage.]

**case-us**, -i, masc., 2, *cheese.*

**castell-um**, -i, neut., 2, *fort,*  
*castle*: [diminutive of

**castr-um**, -i, neut., 2, *fort*;  
plur. castr-a, -ōrum, *camp.*

(N.B.—two camps = bina  
castra.)

[cp. Lancaster, Manchester,  
etc.]

**cās-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *accident,*  
*calamity*; casu, *by chance.*

[cado.]

**catēn-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *a chain*  
(generally in plur.).

**causa**, -ae, fem., 1, *reason, pretext, cause*; in hac causā, *in this case or condition*; causā, *for the sake (of)* with gen., which comes before causā.

**celer**, celeris, celere, adj., *swift*: [hence

**celeritas**, -tātis, fem., 3, *swiftness, speed*. [cp. celerity.]

**cēl-o**, verb 1, *hide, conceal*; rem eum celo = *I conceal the thing from him*. (cp. note, 8, 143.)

**centum**, num. indec., *a hundred*: [hence

**centuri-o**, -ōnis, masc., 3, *a centurion, i.e. officer of a company, (nominally) 100 men, generally about 60*.

**cern-o**, -ere, crēvi, crētum, verb 3, *see, discern, spy*. [cp. discern.]

**cert-us**, -a, -um, adj., *fixed; certain*; certiore eum facere, *to inform him*; certior fieri, *to be informed*.

[**cēter-us**,] -a, -um, adj., *generally used in plur., the rest, the others*. [et cetera.]

**cib-us**, -i, masc., 2, *food*.

**Cimbr-i**, -ōrum, 2, *a German tribe*. After several victories over Roman armies they were annihilated by Marius when trying to migrate into Italy B.C. 101.

**cing-o**, -ere, cinxi, cinctum, verb 3, *surround, gird*.

**circin-us**, -i, masc., 2, *a pair of compasses*.

**circiter**, adv.; and prep. with acc., *about, around*.

**circuit-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *a going round, compass, circuitous route*.

[circum, eo, cp. circuit.]

**circum-do**, -dare, -dedi, -datum, verb 1, *put round, surround*; c. murum urbi and c. urbem muro (abl.).

**circum-duc-o**, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, verb 3, *draw or bring round*.

**circum-mūn-io**, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, verb 4, *strengthen or fortify all round*.

**circum-sist-o**, -ere, -steti, verb 3, *come or stand round*.

**circum-ven-io**, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, verb 4, *come round, surround, ensnare*.

**cis** (also citrā), prep. with acc., *on this side of*; cis Rhenum, *on the west (left) bank of the Rhine*.

**citro**, adv., always with 'ultro'; ultro citroque, *to and fro*: [from adj., citer, hence

**citerior**, superl. citimus, *on this side*. Gallia citerior = *Cisalpine Gaul, i.e. the Gaul south of the Alps*.

**civi-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *state, i.e. collection of citizens*. [civis.]

**clam**, adv., *secretly*.

**clām-or**, -ōris, masc., 3, *shout, cry.*

**clau-do**, -dere, -si, -sum, verb 3, *shut, close.* [cp. clause.]

**clēmenti-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *clemency, forbearance.*  
[from adj. clemens, kind.]

**cli-ens**, -entis, adj. and noun, *a client or dependent*; used of individuals and of tribes or nations.

**co-eo**, -īre, -ii, -itum, verb irreg., *join, unite.*

**coep-i**, -isse, def. verb., perf. with pres. meaning, *to begin*; pass. coeptus sum, etc., used, with passive verbs.

**cōgit-o**, -āre, -āvi, cogitātum, verb 1, *think, ponder over, consider.*

**co-gnāti-o**, -ōnis, fem., 3, *relationship, kindred, family.*  
[cum, nascor.]

**cog-nosc-o**, -ere, cognōvi, cognitum, verb 3, *ascertain, learn.* [cp. recognition.]

**cōg-o**, -ere, coēgi, coactum, verb 3, *bring together, collect*; *compel.* [cum, ago.]

**cohor-s**, -tis, fem., 3, *a cohort, i.e. one-tenth of a legion.*

**col-laudo**, verb 1, *praise, applaud* (as in an assembly).  
[cum, laudo.]

**col-loc-o**, verb 1, *bring together, post.* [locus.]

**col-loqui-um**, -i, neut., 2, *conference.* [loquor.]

**com-meāt-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *supplies.* [meo = *I go.*]

(= (1) passage to and fro; (2) furlough; (3) caravan, trip, passage; (4) supplies.)

**com-memor-o**, verb 1, *call to mind, mention.*

[cp. memory, adj., memor.]

**com-minus**, adv., *in close combat, hand to hand, at close quarters.* [manus.]

**com-mitt-o**, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, verb 3, *entrust, commit*; c. proelium, *engage, or join battle.*

**commod-us**, -a, -um, adj., *suitable, advantageous*;  
[hence adv.]

**commod-e**, -ius, -issime, *satisfactorily, easily.* [mod-us.]

**com-mov-eo**, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtum, verb 2, *move thoroughly, disturb, alarm.*

**com-mūnic-o**, verb 1, *share* (trans.), *take common counsel*, with 'cum' and abl.: [from

**com-mūn-is**, -e, adj., *common, general, public.*

[cp. Fr. 'commun.']

**com-mūt-o**, verb 1, *change* (one thing for another); the thing given or taken in exchange is in ablative.

**com-par-o**, verb 1, *get together, collect*; *compare.*

**com-per-io**, -īre, comperi, compertum, verb 4, *find out, learn* (compertum habeo = *I have ascertained*). See note 19, 465.

**com-plūr-es**, -a, gen. -ium, adj., *several, very many.*

[plus.]

**com-port-o**, verb 1, *bring together.*

**con-cēd-o**, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, verb 3, *retire, submit, give precedence, allow, grant*, with dat. of person.

[cp. concession.]

**concili-um**, -i, neut., 2, *assembly, council.*

**con-clām-o**, verb 1, *shout together.*

**con-curr-o**, -ere, -curri, -cursum, verb 3, *rush* or *run together* (as friends), or *charge* (as enemies); often impersonal in pass.; *concursum est, a charge was made:*

[hence

**con-curs-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *a rush, meeting; confusion.*

[cp. concourse.]

**con-dīci-o**, -ōnis, fem., 3, *agreement, condition.* [con, dico.]

**Condrūs-i**, -orum, a (possibly) German tribe (between Meuse and Rhine).

**con-fero**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum (collatum), verb irreg. 3, *bring together* (c. arma, pedem, etc., *to fight*), *compare; put off; se c. = to go* (betake oneself).

**con-fic-io**, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, verb 3, *finish, finish off; confectus = done up, exhausted.*

[cum, facio.]

**con-fid-o**, -ere, -fīsus sum, verb semi-dep. 3, *trust (in), rely upon*, with dat.

[cp. confidence.]

**con-firm-o**, verb 1, *strengthen, encourage, comfort.*

[firmus, adj.]

**con-fluen-s**, -tis, masc., 3, sing. or plur., *confluence, meeting of two rivers.* [cum, fluo].

[Coblentz = confluentes.]

**con-gred-ior**, -gredi, -gressus, verb dep. 3, *come together, meet, fight.*

[gradior, cp. congress.]

**con-icio**, -icere, -jēci, -jectum, verb 3, *to throw.* [jacio.]

**con-jung-o**, -ere, -junxi, -junctum, verb 3, *join, bring together.* [cp. conjunction.]

**cōn-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *try, endeavour.*

**con-sanguine-us**, -a, -um, adj., *related by blood.*

[sanguis.]

**con-sect-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *to follow, pursue.*

[freq. from sequor.]

**con-sens-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *agreement, consent.* [sentio.]

**con-sequor**, -sequi, -secūtus, verb dep. 3, *follow, attain, obtain, gain.*

[cp. consecutive.]

**con-serv-o**, verb 1, *preserve, keep safe.* [cp. conservative.]

**con-sīd-o**, -ere, -sēdi, sessum, verb 3, *settle down, encamp.*

[sedeo.]

**con-sili-um**, -i, neut., 2, *consultation, plan, purpose, stratagem, judgment*; also = *concilium, meeting*. eo consilio ut ... = *with the intention of ...*; consilium inire = *to form a plan*.

[consul, cp. counsel.]

**con-sist-o**, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, verb 3, *stand still, take a stand*; consist (of), with abl.

**con-spect-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *sight*: [from

**con-spici-o**, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, verb 3, *see, observe*.

[specio, cp. inspection.]

**con-stitu-o**, -ere, -i, constitūtum, verb 3, *set up, station; construct; determine, settle (upon)* with infin.; hence noun, constitutum, *thing settled, arrangement*.

[statuo, cp. constitution.]

**con-suesc-o**, -ere, -suēvi, -suētum, verb 3 (trans. and intrans.), *to accustom, become accustomed*: [hence

**con-suētūd-o**, -inis, fem., 3, *custom, habit*.

[consuetudinem = Fr. coutume.]

**consul**, -is, masc., 3, *consul*:

[hence

**consulāt-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *consulship, the office of consul*.

**consul-o**, -ere, -ui, -tum, verb 3, *consult, deliberate*; te consulo = *I consult you*; tibi consulo = *I consult or take steps for your interests*: [hence

**consult-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a decree, esp. senātus consultum, a decree of the senate*.

**con-sūm-o**, -ere, -sumpsi, -sumptum, verb 3, *consume, spend*. [cp. consumption.]

**con-surg-o**, -ere, -surrexi, -surrectum, verb 3, *rise together*.

[cp. in-surrection.]

**con-tempt-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *contempt*; dat., contemptui mihi est, *he is an object of scorn to me*.

**con-tend-o**, -ere, -tendi, -tentum, verb 3, *strive eagerly for, with acc.; hasten, march; fight, dispute*.

[hence

**con-tenti-o**, -ōnis, fem., 3, *struggle, contest*.

[cp. contention.]

**con-tin-eo**, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, verb 2, *hold, enclose, restrain*.

[teneo, cp. contented.]

**con-ting-o**, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, verb 3, *touch, border upon*; (impers.) *happen*.

[tango, cp. contact.]

**con-tinu-us**, -a, -um, adj., *continuous, (days, etc.) running*.

[contineo.]

**contra**, adv., *on the other side, on the contrary*; prep. with acc., *against*; contra atque (conj.) = *contrary to what* (dictum est) *was said*.

[cp. contrary.]

**con-trah-o**, -ere, -traxi, -trac-tum, verb 3, *bring together, bring about*. [cp. contract.]

- contro-versi-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *quarrel, dispute, controversy*.  
[contra, verito.]
- con-ven-io**, -ire, -vĕni, -ventum, verb 4, *come together, meet*; impers., *it is suitable*; inter eos convenit, *an agreement is made between them*: [hence
- con-vent-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *assembly*; plur., conventus agere, *to hold a court or assizes*. [cp. convention.]
- con-vert-o**, -ere, -verti, -ver-sum, *turn, turn inwards*; c. signa = *turn to face the enemy*. [cp. conversion.]
- con-vinc-o**, -ere, -vici, -victum, verb 3, *convict* (a man of a crime); *prove* (the crime against a man).
- con-voc-o**, verb 1, *call together, summon*. [cp. convocation.]
- cōpi-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *plenty, supplies, riches* (sing. and plur.); also plur. = *forces, troops*.  
[cum, op-em; opp. to inopia; cp. copious.]
- coram**, prep. with abl., *in the presence of*; adv., *openly, personally, face to face*.
- corn-ū**, -ūs, neut., 4, *horn, wing* (of army).
- corp-us**, -oris, neut., 3, *body*.  
[cp. corporation.]
- cort-ex**, -icis, masc., 3, *bark, cork*.
- cotidiān-us**, -a, -um, adj., *daily*: [from
- cotīdie**, adv., *every day* (=quotidie). [quotus, dies.]
- crēber**, crebra, crebrum, adj., *frequent, close together, thick*.
- crēd-o**, -ere, -idi, -itum, verb 3, *intrust, believe, believe in*, with dat.; hoc tibi credo, *I intrust this to you*; tibi credo, *I trust or believe you*; often with acc. and infin. [cp. credit.]
- cruciāt-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *tor-ture*. [crux = cross, stake.]
- crūdēli-tas**, -tātis, fem., 3, *cruelty*.
- crūdēliter**, adv., *cruelly*.  
[crūdēlis, adj.]
- cult-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *training, culture, civilisation*. [colo.]
- cum**, prep. with abl., *with, together with*; joined to personal pron. and rel., mecum, vobiscum, etc.; in compounds generally implies united action, and is spelt 'con-' or 'co-'.
- cum**, conj., *when*; if introducing a point of time, with indic., e.g. cum hoc factum erit, ibo (N.B. tense); if introducing attendant circumstances, with subj., cum haec audiret, or audivisset, abiit, *hearing or having heard thus, he went away*; since (causal), *although*, with subj (cp. note, 10, 193.)
- cunct-us**, -a, -um, adj., *all together, all*.

**cupidi-tas**, -tātis, fem., 3, *desire, eagerness*. [cp. cupidity.]

**cupid-us**, -a, -um, adj., *desirous of*, with gen. [cupio.]

**cupide**, cupidius, cupidissime, adv., *eagerly*.

**cur**, *why?*

**cūr-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *care, anxiety*; hoc mihi curae (dat.) erit, *this shall be my care*.

**curs-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *running, speed, course, direction*.

[curro.]

**cust-ōs**, -ōdis, masc., 3, *a guard, sentinel, keeper*: [hence

**custōdi-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *a watch, guard, custody*.

[cp. custodian.]

**dē**, prep. with abl., *from, down from*; de tertiā vigiliā, *in the third watch*; about, *concerning*; in consequence of.

**dēb-eo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, verb 2, *owe* (with dat. and acc.), *be under an obligation, be entitled*; with infin., debemus ire = *we ought to go*; debuimus ire = *we ought to have gone*. (See note, 36, 86.)

[de, habeo, cp. deb(i)t.]

**de-cēd-o**, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, verb 3, *depart, withdraw, retire*.

**dē-cern-o**, -ere, -crēvi, -crētum, verb 3, *decide, determine*; with infin. [cp. decree.]

**decert-o**, verb 1, *fight it out, fight*.

**dē-cīd-o**, -ere, -cīdi, -cāsum, verb 3, *fall down*.

[cp. decadent.]

**decim-us**, -a, -um, adj., *tenth*. [decem.]

**dē-clār-o**, verb 1, *proclaim, make clear*. [cp. declaration.]

**dē-ditici-us**, -a, -um, adj., *one who has surrendered*. [dedo.]

**dēditi-o**, -onis, fem., 3, *surrender*: [from

**dē-do**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, verb 3, *give up, surrender* (trans.). [de, do.]

**dē-dūc-o**, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, verb 3, *lead away, withdraw*.

[cp. deduction.]

**dē-fatīg-o**, verb 1, *tire out*.

**dē-fend-o**, -ere, -fendi, -fensum, verb 3, *ward off; defend, guard*.

**dē-form-is**, -e, adj., *ill-shapen, ugly*. [forma.]

**deinde**, adv., *then, next*.

[de, inde.]

**dē-ic-io**, } -icere, -jēci, -jectum,  
**dē-jicio**, } verb 3, *throw down*.

[jacio, cp. dejected.]

**dēlect-o**, verb 1, *to delight, charm*; often impers., me delectat, *it delights me*.

**dē-līber-o**, verb 1, *weigh well, deliberate, think over*.

[de, libro = weigh.]



- dē-lig-o**, verb 1, *bind, tie*; *navis deligāta ad ripam, a ship moored to the bank.*  
[ligare, to bind; -cp. ligament.]
- dē-lig-o**, -ere, -lēgi, -lectum, verb 3, *pick out, choose.*  
[lego, cp. elect.]
- dē-menti-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *madness, insanity.*  
[de, mens, cp. demented.]
- dē-migr-o**, verb 1, *emigrate, remove.*
- dē-minu-o**, -ere, -minui, -minūtum, verb 3, *make less, lessen.*  
[minus, cp. diminution.]
- dē-mitt-o**, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, verb 3, *let down, send down; lower*; *'capite demisso, with head down cast.*
- dē-monstr-o**, verb 1, *point out, show.*
- dē-mum**, adv., *at length, at last; indeed.* [dē.]
- dē-neg-o**, verb 1, *refuse (a request).*
- dēn-i**, -ae, -a, num. adj. (distrib.), *ten each.*
- dēnique**, adv., *at last, finally.*
- dē-nunti-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, verb 1, *announce, denounce, threaten, declare* (in a threatening manner).
- dē-per-do**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, verb 3, *lose (entirely).*  
[cp. perdition.]
- dē-pōn-o**, -ere, -posui, -positum, verb 3, *lay down, deposite*; *spem deponere, to give up hope.*
- dē-prec-or**, -āri, -ātus, dep. 1, *beg off, avoid by prayer.*  
[prec-em, cp. deprecate.]
- dē-roq-o**, verb 1, *take away, diminish.* [cp. derogatory.]
- dē-ser-o**, -ere, -serui, -sertum, verb 3, *abandon, desert*:  
[hence
- dē-sert-or**, -ōris, masc., 3, *a deserter.*
- dē-sider-o**, verb 1, *long for, miss.* [Fr. désirer, desire.]
- dē-sidi-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *sloth, inactivity, idleness.*  
[de, sed-eo.]
- dē-sil-io**, -īre, -silui, -sultum, verb 4, *jump down.*  
[de, salio.]
- dē-sist-o**, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, verb 3, *give up, desist from, cease, with abl.*
- dē-spect-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *view (looking down).* [de, specio.]
- dē-spēr-o**, verb 1, *to despair.*  
[spes.]
- de-spoli-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, verb 1, *rob, despoil*; (with acc. and abl.) *eum armis despolio, I despoil him of his armour.*
- dē-sum**, -esse, -fui, verb irreg., *be wanting or deficient*; *nihil mihi deest, I lack nothing.*
- dē-super**, adv., *from above.*

**dē-teri-or**, -us, comp. adj., from *dēter* (obsolete adj.), *worse, deficient, deteriorated*; (sup. *deterimus*). [de.]

**dē-terr-eo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, verb 2, *frighten, deter, dismay*.

**de-trah-o**, -ere, -traxi, tractum, verb 3, *pull down, take off*.

**dē-trīment-um**, -i, neut., 2, *loss, damage*.

[de, tero, cp. detriment.]

**deus**, dei, masc., 2, *God*.

[cp. deity.]

**dē-veh-o**, -ere, -vexi, -vectum, verb 3, *bring, convey*.

**dex-ter**, -tra, -trum, adj., *right* (hand), comp. *dexterior, dextimus*. [cp. dexterous.]

**dici-o**, -ōnis, fem., 3, *rule, sway, power*.

**dīc-o**, -ere, dixi, dictum, verb 3, *say, declare*.

**di-es**, -ēi, 5, *day*; generally masc., but sometimes fem. = *an appointed day*.

**dif-fero**, -ferre, dis-tuli, dilatum, verb irreg. 3, *disperse; put off; differ*.

**difficul-tas**, -tātis, fem., 3, *difficulty*. [difficilis, adj.]

**dīgni-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *dignity, authority*. [dignus, adj.]

**diligenti-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *care, earnestness, attention*.

[diligens, adj.]

**dī-mitt-o**, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, verb 3, *send away, dismiss, let go*.

**dīrim-o**, -ere, dīrēmi, dīremp-tum, verb 3, *bring to an end*. [dis, emo.]

**dis-cēd-o**, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, verb 3, *go away, depart* :

[hence

**dis-cess-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *departure*.

**disci-plīn-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *teaching, training, discipline*.

[disco, cp. disciple.]

**di-sperg-o**, -ere, -spersi, -persum, verb 3, *scatter, disperse*.

[spargo.]

**dis-pōn-o**, -ere, -posui, -positum, verb 3, *arrange, set in order*. [cp. disposition.]

**dis-sensi-o**, -ōnis, fem., 3, *disagreement, quarrel*.

[dis, sentio.]

**dis-simul-o**, verb 1, *conceal, keep secret*.

[cp. dissimulation.]

**diū**, adv., *for a long time*; comp. *diūtius, diūtissime*.

**diurn-us**, -a, -um, adj., *by day, daily*.

**diūturni-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *long duration* : [from

**diūturn-us**, -a, -um, adj., *long* (i.e. lasting a long time).

[diu.]

**dīvīn-us**, -a, -um, adj., *divine, godly*. [dīvus, a god.]

**Divitiac-us**, -i, masc., 2, a chief of the tribe of the Aedui.

**dō**, dāre, dēdi, dātum, verb 1, *give*. [cp. dative.]

- dol-us**, -i, masc., 2, *trick, craft, guile.*
- domicil-um**, -i, neut., 2, *home.*
- domin-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *to domineer, 'lord it.'*  
[dominus.]
- dom-us**, -ūs, fem. 4 (some cases of 2), *house, home*; locative domi, *at home.*
- dōn-o**, verb 1, *to present, give.*  
[dōnum.]
- druid-es**, -um, masc., 3, *the Druids*, priests of the Gauls and ancient Britons.
- Dub-is**, -is, acc. -im, the river *Doubs*, tributary of the Rhone.
- dubit-o**, verb 1, *hesitate* (with infin.); *doubt* (with 'quin' and subj., when used negatively); also with 'de' and abl. [duo, habeo.]
- ducent-i**, -ae, -a (num. adj.), *two hundred.*
- dūc-o**, -ere, duxi, ductum, verb 3, *lead, conduct*; *marry*, i.e. *lead home*; *prolong*; *draw* (a line, or lines of fortification); *consider.*
- dum**, conj., *while* (with pres. indic. even in past time); *until* (with subj.).
- du-o**, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two.*
- dupl-ex**, gen. -icis, adj., *double.*  
[duo, plico, cp. twofold.]
- dūr-iti-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *hardness, severity*: [from
- dūr-us**, -a, -um, adj., *hard, difficult.*
- e** or **ex**, prep. with abl., *out of, from.*
- ēdo**, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditum, verb 3, *bring out, produce*; *announce*; collis editus, *a hill rising* (from a plain or a river). [cp. edition.]
- ēdūc-o**, -ere, -duxi, -ductum, verb 3, *lead or bring out.*
- effēmin-o**, verb 1, *to make effeminate or soft.*  
[ex, fēmina.]
- ef-fero**, ef-ferre, ex-tuli, ē-lātum, verb 3 (irreg.), *bring out*; *relate, report.*
- ef-fic-io**, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, verb 3, *finish, produce, bring about.* [e, facio, cp. effect.]
- ego**, pers. pron., *I*; me, mei, mihi, me.
- ēgredior**, egredi, egressus, verb dep. 3, *march or go out.*  
[cp. egress.]
- ēgregie**, adv., *splendidly, very well*, from adj. egregius.  
[e, grex, herd.]
- ē-ic-io**, } -ere, ē-jeci, e-jectum,  
**ē-jic-io**, } verb 3, *throw out.*  
[cp. eject.]
- ē-migr-o**, verb 1 *emigrate, move* (in a body).
- em-o**, -ere, ēmi, emptum, verb 3, *buy.*
- enim**, conj., *for* (giving a reason); stands second in its sentence.
- ē-nunti-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, verb 1, *announce, publish.*  
[cp. enunciation.]

**eo**, adv., *thither* (there), *to that place*; *on it* (or *them*) = French 'y.' [is, ea, id.]

**ephippi-a**, -ōrum, neut., 2, *horsecloth* (used instead of a saddle).

[Gk. 'hippos,' horse.]

**ephippiat-us**, -a, -um, adj., *with horsecloths or saddles*.

**equ-es**, -itis, masc., 3, *horseman, cavalry soldier*.

[equus, eo : hence

**equest-er**, -ris, -re, adj. (like acer), *pertaining to cavalry, equestrian*.

**equitāt-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *cavalry*.

**equ-us**, -i, masc., 2, *a horse*.

**ē-rip-io**, -ere, ēripui, ēreptum, verb 3, *snatch away, rescue*.

[e, rapio.]

**ē-rump-o**, -ere, ē-rūpi, ē-ruptum, verb 3, *break out, make a sally*. [cp. eruption.]

**e-rupt-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *a sally; dash out*.

**etiam**, conj., *besides, also; even*. [et, jam.]

**etsi**, conj., *even if, although*.

**ē-voc-o**, verb 1, *call out, summon*.

**ex=e**, prep. with abl., *out of, from; on the side of, una ex parte, on one side; after; ex consultu, in accordance with the decree*.

(N.B.—'a' or 'ab' implies simply motion from, 'e' or 'ex' motion from inside the place mentioned.)

**ex-agit-o**, verb 1, *harass, drive out*.

**ex-cēd-o**, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, verb 3, *go out, depart*.

[cp. excess.]

**ex-cip-io**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, verb 3, *receive, take on* (e.g. a kingdom).

**ex-curs-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *a dash or sally; invasion*.

[ex, curro, cp. excursion.]

**exempl-um**, -i, neut., 2, *example, instance, method*.

**ex-eo**, -ire, -ii, -itum, verb irreg., *go out*. [cp. exit.]

**exerc-eo**, -ere, -ui, -itum, verb 2, *exercise, train, practise* :

[hence

**exercitati-o**, -onis, fem., 3, *practice, training*.

**exercitat-us**, -a, -um, adj., *trained*.

[from exercito, freq. of exerceo.]

**exercit-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *army*.

**exigui-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *scantiness, small size or amount*. [exiguus, adj.]

**existim-o**, verb 1, *think, consider*.

[ex, aestimo, cp. estimation.]

**exit-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *way out; close, end*. [ex, eo.]

**ex-pedīt-us**, -a, -um, adj., *unencumbered, lightly armed, i.e. without impedimenta, pack, etc. (opp. to impeditus)*.

**ex-pell-o**, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, verb 3, *drive out*.

[cp. expulsion.]

**ex-per-ior**, -iri, expertus, verb dep. 4, *to try or experience (not to endeavour)*.

**ex-plōrāt-or**, -ōris, masc., 3, *scout, spy*.

**ex-port-o**, verb 1, *carry out or away*.

**ex-prim-o**, -ere, -pressi, -pres-sum, verb 3, *squeeze out, extort*.

[premo.]

**ex-quir-o**, -ere, -quisīvi, -quisī-tum, verb 3, *seek out, inquire*.

[quaero, cp. exquisite.]

**ex-spect-o**, verb 1, *wait, expect, wait to see*.

**ex-stru-o**, -ere, -struxi, -struc-tum, verb 3, *build up, construct*.

**extrā**, prep. with acc., *outside*.

**extrēm-us**, -a, -um, superl. adj., from extrā ; (comp. exterior), *furthest* ; ad extremum, *to the utmost limit*.

**Fabi-us**, -i, 2, Quintus Fabius Maximus. See **Allobroges**.

[cp. 'Fabian' tactics.]

**facil-e**, adv. (of facilis), *easily*.

**facin-us**, -oris, neut., 3, *crime*.

[facio.]

**fac-io**, -ere, fēcī, factum, verb 3, *make, do*.

**fact-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *faction, party*.

**facul-tas**, -tātis, fem., 3, *opportunity, chance*, generally with gen. of a gerund, *stock, supply*.

[facio.]

**fall-o**, -ere, fefelli, falsum, verb 3, *deceive* ; me fallit, *it escapes my notice*. [cp. false.]

**famili-a**, -ae, *family*.

(N.B. old gen. mater-famili-as.)

**familiār-is**, -e, adj., *friendly, familiar* ; and as noun, *friend* :

[hence

**familiār-iter**, adv., *in a friendly manner*.

**fās**, noun, indec., *divine law ; right, proper* (to be translated generally by an adj.).

**fāt-um**, -i, neut., 2, *fate, fortune*.

[fāri.]

**fēlici-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *good fortune, happiness*. [felix.]

**ferē**, adv., *about, almost, nearly*.

**fero**, ferre, tuli, lātum, verb irreg. 3, *carry, bear, endure ; propose* ; hoc graviter ferre, *to take this much to heart*, i.e. *to be annoyed at it*.

**fer-us**, -a, -um, adj., *savage, wild, fierce*.

**fid-es**, -ei, fem., 5, *faith, loyalty, confidence, allegiance, credibility*, etc., fidem dare or facere, *give assurance of good faith* ; in fidem recipere, *take under one's protection*.

**fīli-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *daughter* (dat. plur. filiabus).

[cp. Fr. fille.]

**fili-us**, -i, masc., 2, *son*.

[Fr. fils.]

**fin-g-o**, -ere, finxi, fictum, verb  
3, *fashion, devise, invent,*  
*pretend.* [cp. fiction.]

**fin-is**, -is, masc., 3, *end, limit*;  
(finem facere, *put an end*  
*to*, with gen. or dat.): plur.  
fin-es, -ium, *boundaries, terri-*  
*tory.*

**finitim-us**, -a, -um, adj., *neigh-*  
*bouring*; as plur. noun  
finitim-i, -ōrum, *neighbours.*  
[fines.]

**fi-o**, fieri, factus sum, verb  
irreg., quasi-passive, *become,*  
*be made* (used as pass. of  
facio.)

**firm-us**, -a, -um, adj., *strong,*  
*steady.*

**Flaccus**, Caius Valerius, pro-  
consul (*i.e.* governor) of  
Gaul (the Roman province)  
B.C. 83.

**fle-o**, flēre, flēvi, flētum, verb 2,  
*weep.*

**flēt-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *weeping.*  
[fleo.]

**flōrens**, adj., *flourishing.*  
[pres. part. of floreo.]

**flūm-en**, -inis, neut., 3, *river.*  
[fluo.]

**forte**, adv., *by chance* (abl. of  
noun fors). cp. forsitan =  
*perhaps, i.e. it may happen.*

**fort-is**, -e, adj., *brave.*  
[cp. fortitude.]

**fortūn-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *fortune.*  
[fors.]

**foss-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *a ditch,*  
*trench.* [fodio.]

**frang-o**, -ere, frēgi, fractum,  
verb 3, **break**, *wreck* (trans.).  
[cp. fracture.]

**frā-ter**, -tris, masc., 3, **brother.**

**frātern-us**, -a, -um, adj.,  
**brotherly**; nomen fratenum,  
*the name of brother.*

**fremit-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *loud*  
*noise, uproar, excitement.*  
[fremo.]

**frequens**, adj., *in large numbers,*  
*thick, crowded.* [cp. frequent.]

**frigid-us**, -a, -um, adj., *cold*;  
[from

**frīg-us**, -oris, neut., 3, *cold.*

**frūmentāri-us**, -a, -um, adj.,  
*connected with provisions*;  
res frumentaria, *corn supply.*

**frūment-or**, -āri -ātus, verb  
dep. 1, *to get corn, forage.*

**frūment-um**, -i, neut., 2, *corn,*  
*provisions.*

**fug-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *flight* : [from

**fug-io**, -ere, fūgi, fugitum, verb  
3, *to flee, run away.*  
[cp. fugitive.]

**fund-o**, -ere, fūdi, fūsum, verb  
3, *pour*; *rout, defeat.*  
[cp. confusion.]

**fur-or**, -ōris, masc., 3, *madness.*  
[cp. fury.]

**Gall-i**, -ōrum, 2, *the Gauls*, inhabitants of :

**Galli-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *Gaul*, including :

(a) *Gallia Cisalpina*, North Italy from river Padus (Po) to Alps.

(b) *Gallia*, the Province—*Provincia Romana*—a strip of country in Southern France from the Pyrenees to Lake Geneva.

(c) *Gallia* (generally), all the country west of the Rhine.

**Gallic-us**, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic*, belonging to the Gauls.

**gaud-eo**, -ere, gavīsus sum, verb semi-dep. 2, *rejoice*.

**gener-ātim**, adv., according to race or tribe. [genus, gener-is.]

**gens**, gentis, fem., 3, *race, clan, tribe*.

**gen-us**, -eris, neut., 3, *race, kind, method* (a more general word than 'gens').

[cp. general.]

**Germān-i**, -orum, 2, *the Germans*.

**ger-o**, -ere, gessi, gestum, verb 3, *carry on, wage; wear; res bene gestae, great exploits*.

**gladi-us**, -i, masc., 2, *a sword*.

**grand-is**, -e, adj., *large, strong, powerful*.

**grāti-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *favour, regard, gratitude; gratiam referre, show gratitude; plur. gratiae, expressions of grati-*

*tude, thanks; ei gratias agere, to thank him.* [grātus.]

**grātūlāt-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *congratulation, joy*.

**grātūl-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *wish joy to, congratulate* (with dat. of person). [gratus.]

**grav-is**, -e, adj., *heavy, severe, serious; influential*: [hence

**gravi-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *heaviness; severity; influence, weight*.

**gravi-ter**, adv., *heavily, severely; graviter ferre aliquid, to take something to heart, be annoyed at it*.

**grav-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1 (from act. gravo), *to be vexed or annoyed*. [gravis.]

**hab-eo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, verb 2, *have, hold, possess; consider; involve; orationem habere, to make a speech*.

**Harud-es**, -um, 3, a German tribe, north of Lake Venetus (Constance).

**Helvetic-us**, -a, -um, adj., *Helvetian, i.e. belonging to the*

**Helveti-i**, -orum, 2, a Gallic race inhabiting the modern Switzerland.

**hībern-a**, -orum, 2, *winter quarters or camp* (= castra hiberna). [hiems.]

**hic, haec, hoc**, adj., *this, the latter*.

**hiem(p)s**, hiemis, fem., 3, *winter, wintry weather*.

- hom-o**, -inis, com., 3, *man*, *human being*.
- honest-us**, -a, -um, adj., *honourable, distinguished, respectable*: [from
- hon-or**, -ōris, masc., 3, *honour, dignity, influence*; plur. honores, *honours, distinctions*: [hence
- honōrific-us**, -a, -um, *honourable, i.e. conferring honour or distinction (as opp. to honestus, receiving or deserving it)*.
- horr-eo**, -ere, -ui, *stand on end, bristle; shudder at, dread (with acc.)*. [cp. horrid.]
- hort-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *exhort, encourage, urge*.
- hosp-es**, -itis, masc., 3, *host, guest, visitor, i.e. a giver or receiver of hospitality*.
- hospiti-um**, -i, neut., 2, *hospitality*.
- host-is**, -is, com., 3, *enemy*.
- hūc**, adv., *hither*; huc illuc, *hither and thither*.
- hūmāni-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *kindness, refinement, good breeding*: [from
- hūmān-us**, -a, -um, adj., *human, humane, refined*.
- humil-is**, -e, adj., *humble, in a low position*; comp. humilior, *humil-limus*. [humus, *ground*.]
- ibi**, adv., *there, in that place*.
- idem**, eadem, idem, adj., *the same*; often as an emphatic pronoun, (he) *also*, etc.; idem atque, *the same as ...* [cp. identical.]
- idōne-us**, -a, -um, adj., *suitable (with dat.)*.
- igitur**, conj., *therefore* (generally after the first word of sentence).
- ign-is**, -is, masc., 3, *fire*.
- ignosc-o**, -ere, ignōvi, ignōtum, verb 3, *overlook, pardon*; hoc mihi ignovit, *he pardoned me this*. [in, (g)nosco.]
- immān-is**, -e, adj., *vast, immense*.
- im-mortāl-is**, -e, adj., *immortal, undying*.
- im-pediment-um**, -i, neut., 2, *hindrance, obstacle*; plur. baggage (of an army): [from
- im-ped-io**, -ire, -īvi, -ītum, verb 4, *hinder, impede*. [in, pes = *entangling the feet*.]
- im-pell-o**, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, verb 3, *urge on, induce, impel*.
- im-pens-us**, -a, -um, adj., *great, considerable, i.e. profusely expended*. [pend-o, *weigh, pay*.]
- imperāt-or**, -ōris, masc., 3, *commander in chief*. [emperor.]
- im-perīt-us**, -a, -um, adj., *unskilled, inexperienced*; (with gen., imperitus artis, *with no knowledge of art*). [cp. exper-ior.]



**imperi-um**, -i, neut., 2, *command, government, control, rule*: [from

**imper-o**, verb 1, *command, rule over* (with dat. of person commanded, acc. of thing ordered, e.g. *obsides* (acc.) *mihi imperat, he orders hostages from me*).

**impetr-o**, verb 1, *obtain* (a request).

**impet-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *attack, charge, onset*. [in, peto.]

**im-plōr-o**, verb 1, *beg, beseech, implore*, with acc. of person or thing.

**im-pōn-o**, -ere, -posui, -positum, verb 3, *to place in or upon*; *milites in equos or equis* (dat.) *imposuit, he put the soldiers on horseback*.

**import-o**, verb 1, *import, bring in*.

**im-pugn-o**, verb 1, *attack, invade* (with acc.).

**in**, prep. with acc., *into, against, at* (implying motion towards); *in dies, from day to day*; with abl., *in, upon, in the case of*; *in armis, under arms*; *in eo flumine, over (on) that river*.

N.B.—This 'in' is constantly associated with verbs, etc., as a prefix = *in* or *upon*, and must be distinguished from the inseparable prefix 'in-' = *un*, as in 'invictus' *unconquered*.

**in-cend-o**, -ere, -cendi, -censum, verb 3, *set on fire, burn*. [cp. *incense*.]

**in-cīd-o**, -ere, -cīdi, -cāsūm, *fall in with, meet* (with 'in' and acc.). [in, cādo.]

**in-cīt-o**, verb 1, *set in rapid motion, spur on; excite*. [freq. of *cieo*.]

**in-col-o**, -ere, -colui, verb 3, *inhabit*.

**in-colum-is**, -e, adj., *safe, unharmed*.

**in-crēdibil-is**, -e, adj., *incredible, not to be believed*. [crēd-o.]

**in-crepit-o**, verb 1, *jeer at, taunt*. [freq. of *crepo*.]

**in-curs-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *raid, invasion*.

[in, *curro*, cp. *incursion*.]

**in-cūs-o**, verb 1, *blame, rebuke*. [causa.]

**inde**, adv., (a) of place, *thence, from that place*; (b) of time, *then, afterwards*.

**in-dic-o**, -ere, -dixi, -dictum, verb 3, *proclaim, announce, declare*.

**in-diligent-ius**, adv., comp., *less carefully*. [in, *diligens*.]

**indulg-eo**, -ēre, indulsi, indulsum, verb 2, *be indulgent, indulge* (with dat.).

**indūti-ae**, -arum, fem., 1, *truce, armistice*.

**in-eo**, -ire, -ii, -itum, verb irreg., *enter, go into*; *consilium inire, form a plan*.

**inerm-us**, -a, -um, adj., *unarmed*; also *in-erm-is*, -e.

[in, arma.]

**iners**, adj., gen. *inertis*, *inactive, sluggish*. [in, ars.]

**in-fām-ia**, -iae, fem., 1, *ill-fame, dishonour*.

[fama, report.]

**in-fero**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum (il-lātum), verb irreg. 3, *bring against*; gen. in phrase, *bellum inferre, to make war, take the offensive* (with dat. or 'in' with acc.); *bring upon, inflict*.

**in-firmi-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *weakness*:

[from

**in-firm-us**, -a, -um, adj., *weak*.

**in-flu-o**, -ere, -fluxi, -fluxum, verb 3, *flow into*.

[cp. influx.]

**ingens**, gen. *ingentis*, adj., *huge, great, remarkable*.

**in-icio**, (or *injicio*), -icere, -jeci, -jectum, verb 3, *throw in or upon*; *metum mihi injicit, he puts fear into me, makes me afraid*. [jacio, cp. injection.]

**inimīc-us**, -a, -um, adj., *hostile, unfriendly*. [in, amicus.]

**initi-um**, -i, neut. 2, *beginning*.

[in, eo.]

**iniqu-us**, -a, -um, adj., *uneven, unfavourable; unfair, unreasonable*.

[in, aequus, cp. iniquity.]

**in-jūri-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *wrong, injury*.

[jus.]

**in-nasc-or**, -i, -nātus, verb dep. 3, *arise, grow up*.

[cp. innate.]

**in-noc-ens**, gen. -entis, adj., *innocent, harmless*.

[in, noceo]: [hence

**in-nocenti-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *innocence, uprightness*.

**in-opi-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *lack, scarcity*. [in, opem.]

**in-opīnans**, adj., *not on the look out, unaware*.

[in, opinor.]

**in-quam**, verb defective, *say*; parts that exist as if from 'inquio,' like 'capio'; generally used in 3rd sing. 'inquit,' in reporting the actual words, after one or two words of the speech, *he says*.

**in-sci-us**, -a, -um, adj., *unconscious*.

[scio.]

**insidi-ae**, -ārum, fem., 1, *ambuscade, ambush; trick, stratagem*. [cp. insidious.]

**in-sil-io**, -īre, -silui, insultum, verb 4, *leap into or upon*.

[cp. insult.]

**in-stit-uo**, -uere, -ui, -ūtum, verb 3, *set up, build; establish*:

[hence

**institut-um**, -i, neut., 2, *settled plan, arrangement; ex instituto, according to arrangement*. [cp. institution.]

**in-stru-o**, -ere, -struxi, -structum, verb 3, *build, set up, draw up* (line of battle).

[cp. instruction.]

**intel-leg-o**, -ere, -lexi, -lectum,  
verb 3, *understand, find out.*

[cp. intellect.]

**inter**, prep. with acc., *between, among*; *inter se*, *mutually, reciprocally.*

**inter-cēd-o**, -ere -cessi, -cessum,  
verb 3, *intervene, come between, exist between.*

**inter-clūd-o**, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, verb 3, *shut in, inclose, cut off.*

**inter-dic-o**, -ere, -dixi, -dictum,  
verb 3, *forbid, interdict*:  
Ariovistus Romanis (dat.)  
Galliā interdixit = *A. forbade the Romans (rights in) Gaul.*

**interdum**, adv., *sometimes, now and then.*

**interea**, adv., *meanwhile* = *interim.*

**inter-fic-io**, -ēre, -fēci, -fectum,  
verb 3, *to kill, destroy*; cp.  
'do him in.' [inter, facio.]

**interim**, adv., *meanwhile* = *interea.*

**inter-mitt-o**, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, verb 3, *leave off, let slip, intermit*; *leave an interval.*

**inter-pell-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,  
verb 1, *hinder, obstruct.*

**inter-pon-o**, -ere, -posui, -positum, verb 3, *put ... between, interpose, put forward.*

**inter-vall-um**, -i, neut., 2 (space between two palisades), *distance, interval.* [vallum.]

**in-tex-o**, -ere, -ui, intextum,  
verb 3, *interweave, interlace.*

**intra**, prep. with acc., *within, inside.*

**intro-mitt-o**, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, verb 3, *send or let in.*

**in-tu-eor**, -ēri, -itus, verb dep.  
2, *look upon, gaze upon* (with acc.).

**in-usitāt-us**, -a, -um, adj.,  
*unusual.* [ūsus.]

**in-ven-io**, -īre, -veni, -ventum,  
verb 4, *find, ascertain* (with acc.). [cp. invention.]

**in-vict-us**, -a, -um, adj., *unconquered.* [vinco.]

**in-vid-eo**, -ēre, -vīdi, -vīsum,  
verb 2 (*look spitefully at*),  
*envy, grudge* (with dat. of person envied).

**invito**, verb 1, *invite, request.*

**invit-us**, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling, reluctant*; *me invito, against my will.*

**ips-e**, -a, -um, adj., *emphasizing person or thing expressed or understood*; *ipse regi ipsi dedi, I myself gave (it) to the king himself.*

**ir-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *anger.* [cp. irate.]

**irācund-us**, -a, -um, *prone to anger, hot-tempered, passionate.*

**ir-rīd-eo**, -ēre, -rīsi, -rīsum,  
verb 2, *laugh at, jeer at* (with dat. or acc.).

**ir-rīdīcūle**, adv., *unwittily*.  
[rīdeo.]

**ir-rump-o**, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum,  
verb 3, *break* or *rush in*  
(intrans.).

**is, ea, id**, adj. demonstrative,  
*that*, generally to be trans-  
lated by 'the' before a  
relative; *eae naves quas*  
*misit ... the ships, which he*  
*sent ...*

*is, ea, id* are used respec-  
tively for *he, she, it, they*,  
*i.e.* 3rd pers. pronouns, in all  
cases.

**ita**, adv., *thus, so*; often with  
'ut,' *just as*; *so ... that*, with  
subj. (expressing conse-  
quence).

**Itali-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *Italy*.

**itaque**, adv., *and so, conse-*  
*quently*.

**iter**, itineris, neut., 3, *march*,  
*journey, road*; *ex itinere*,  
*on the march*; *itineribus*  
*magnis, by forced marches*.

[eo, itum.]

**iterum**, adv., *a second time*,  
*again*.

**jac-io**, -ere, jēci, jactum, verb 3,  
*throw, hurl* (in compounds  
-icio).

**jam**, adv., *already, now*.

**jub-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *mane* (of  
horse), *crest of cock*, etc.

**jub-eo**, -ēre, jussi, jussum,  
verb 2, *command, order*  
(with acc. and infin.).

(*N.B.*—The distinction be-  
tween 'jubeo' and 'impero,'  
etc., is that the former is  
generally used without re-  
ference to any definite person  
to whom the order is given:  
*jubet pontem rescindi*; but,  
*imperat Ciceroni ut castra*  
*moveat*.)

*jussa*, as noun = *commands*,  
*orders*, p.p.p., neut. plur.

**jūdicī-um**, -i, neut., 2, *right*  
*of jurisdiction, judgment*,  
*opinion*. [judex.]

**jūdic-o**, verb 1, *to judge*,  
*consider*.

**jūment-um**, -i, neut., 2, *beast*  
*of burden, horse, mule*, etc.  
[ju-vo.]

**jūr-o**, -āre, -āvi, p. part. act.  
*jurātus, to swear, take an*  
*oath*: [from

**jūs**, jūris, neut., 3, *an oath*;  
plur., *laws*. [cp. jury.]

**jus-jurandum**, juris-jurandi,  
neut., 2, *an oath*.

**just-us**, -a, -um, adj., *just*,  
*fair, true, complete*. [jus.]

**lab-or**, -ōris, masc., 3, *toil*,  
*exertion*; *hardship*: [hence

**labōr-o**, verb 1, *take pains*;  
*strive after*, with acc.; *be in*  
*difficulties*.

**lac**, lactis, neut., 3, *milk*.

- laccess-o**, -ere, -īvi, -itum, verb 3, *provoke, challenge.*
- lacrim-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *a tear* (generally in plur.).
- lap-is**, -idis, masc., 3, *a stone.*
- lassitūd-o**, -inis, fem., 3, *weariness, fatigue.* [lassus, weary.]
- lātītūd-o**, -inis, fem., 3, *breadth* [latus, broad.]
- lātrōcini-um**, -i, neut., 2, *robbery, piracy.* [latro, a robber.]
- lāt-us**, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide*; superl. adv. *latissime, very widely.*
- lāt-us**, -ēris, neut., 3, *side.* [cp. lateral.]
- laus**, laudis, fem., 3, *praise, honour.*
- lāv-o**, -āre, lāvi, lavātum, verb 1, *to wash*; in pass. *to bathe* (like Greek *middle voice*). [cp. lavatory.]
- lēgāt-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *an embassy*: [from
- lēgāt-us**, -i, masc., 2, *a person put in place of somebody else*: so (1) *an ambassador*, (2) *a lieutenant-general*, (3) *a governor* (of a province). [lēg-o, to delegate.]
- leg-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *a legion, i.e. regiment of 3000 to 6000 infantry.* [cp. lego.]
- lēniter**, adv., *gently.* [lēnis, gentle.]
- Leuc-i**, -ōrum, 2, *a tribe in Gaul near Vosges mountains.*
- lex**, lēgis, fem., 3, *a law.* [cp. legal.]
- libenter**, adv., *willingly.* [libens, willing.]
- liber**, -a, -um, adj., *free.*
- liber-āli-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *generosity.*
- liber-āliter**, adv., *generously.*
- liber-i**, -ōrum, masc., 2, *children.*
- liber-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *liberty, freedom.*
- lic-et**, -uit (or licitum est), verb impers. 2, *it is lawful* (with dat. of person); mihi licet ire or ut eam, *I am allowed to go.*
- Lingōn-ēs**, -um (acc. -ās), *a tribe in East Central Gaul near source of Seine (Se-quana).*
- lingu-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *tongue; language.*
- lin-ter**, -tris, fem., 3, *a boat, skiff.*
- litter-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *a letter* (of the alphabet); plur. -ae, -arum, *a letter, i.e. an epistle, (letters, history, literature).*
- loc-us**, -i, masc., 2, *a place*; plur. usually loc-a, -orum, *district, region.*
- longe**, adv., *far; by far.*
- longinqu-us**, -a, -um, adj., *distant*: [from
- long-us**, -a, -um, adj., *long; distant; tedious.*

- loqu-or**, -i, locūtus, verb dep. 3, *speaking, say*. [cp. elocution.]
- lūn-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *the moon*; (as a goddess) Luna.
- māchināti-o**, -ōnis, fem., 3, *machine, engine of war*.  
[abstract for the concrete, māchina.]
- magis**, comp. adv. (pos. magno-pere), *more, in a higher degree*.  
[adj., mag-nus]: [hence
- magistrāt-us**, -ūs, masc., 4 (office of a magis-ter, *magistracy*), *magistrate, ruler* (opp. of minis-ter, *a servant*, from minus).
- magnitūd-o**, -inis, fem., 3, *large size, greatness*: [from
- magn-us**, -a, -um, adj., *large, great, important* (comp. major, maximus).
- mandāt-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a thing ordered, a command, order, instruction*: [p.p.p. of
- mand-o**, verb 1, *commit, order, enjoin*; hoc tibi mandavi, *I gave you this order* (generally with 'ut' or 'ne' and subj.).  
[manus, do.]
- māne**, indec. noun, *morning, in the morning*.
- man-eo**, -ēre, mansi, mansum, verb 2, *stay, remain*.  
[cp. mansion.]
- mansuētūd-o**, -inis, fem., 3, *mildness, kindness, clemency*.  
[manus, suesco.]
- man-us**, -ūs, fem., 4, *hand, handful*; *small number, number or force*.
- Mari-us**, -i, 2, Caius Marius, the famous Roman general, seven times consul, conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni; see Cimbri.
- māt-er**, matris, fem, 3, **mother**: [hence
- māteri-a**, -ae, fem, 1, *material* (timber, etc.); (also 5, materi-es).  
[cp. mother of pearl.]
- mātūr-o**, verb 1 (*make or become ripe*); *hasten, hurry* (often with infin.): [from
- mātūr-us**, -a, -um, adj., *ripe, ready* (comp. maturior, maturrimus, or maturissimus; adv. maturrime). [mā-ne.]
- mediocriter**, adv., *in a moderate degree, moderately*; non mediocriter, *greatly* (adj. mediō-cris, *moderate*): [from
- medi-us**, -a, -um, adj., *middle, between*; (with gen. 8, 137) in medio flumine, *in the middle of the river*.
- memori-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *memory*.  
[mem-ini, mem-or, adj.]
- Menapi-i**, -ōrum, 2, a Gallic tribe living near mouths of Scheldt, Meuse and Rhine.
- men-s**, men-tis, fem., 3, *mind, feelings, intellect, thought*.  
[mem-ini, re-min-iscor.]
- mens-is**, -is, masc., 3, *month*.  
[me-tior, men-sus, *measure*.]

**mercāt-or**, -ōris, masc., 3, *trader, merchant*. [merx.]

**merc-ēs**, -ēdis, fem., 3, *pay, hire, wages* : [connected with

**mer-eor**, -ēri, meritus, verb dep. 2, *deserve, earn, merit* (also act. mereo).

**meridi-es**, -ēi, fem., 5, *midday, noon* ; *south*. [medius, dies.]

**merit-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a thing earned, desert, reward* ; *service, benefit*. [p.p.p. of mereo.]

**Mēti-us**, -i, 2 (Marcus), one of the two envoys sent by Caesar to Ariovistus (21, 520).

**met-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *fear, panic*.

**me-us**, -a, -um, adj., *my, mine*. [ego, me-i.]

**mīl-es**, -itis, masc., 3, *a soldier, foot-soldier, private* (as opp. to officer).

[connected with 'mille,' implying large numbers.]

**militār-is**, neut. -e, adj., *connected with soldiers, military, warlike* ; *res militaris, warfare, military matters*.

**mille**, num., *a thousand* (indec., generally as adj. in sing. ; plur. mill-ia or mil-ia, -ium, -ibus ; used as noun with gen. : tria millia equitum, 3000 cavalry, i.e. 3 thousands of horsemen) ; mille passus = *a mile*, 1000 (double) paces ; tria millia passuum, 3 miles.

**minu-o**, -ere, minui, minūtum, verb 3, *to lessen, diminish* :

[from

**min-us**, adv., *less* (minor, comp. of parvus) ; also as noun : minus animi, *less courage*.

**mīr-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *to wonder, wonder at, admire* (with acc.).

**mīr-us**, -a, -um, adj., *wonderful, astonishing*.

**mis-er**, -era, -erum, adj., *piti-able, wretched, unfortunate*.

**miser-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *to pity ; lament, deplore* (with acc.). [miser.]

**mitt-o**, -ere, mīsi, missum, verb 3, *send, send a message*. [cp. mission.]

**mōbil-is**, -e, adj., *easily moved, fickle, changeable*.

[= movibilis, moveo.]

**modo**, adv., *only ; just now, now* ; non modo, *not only* :

[from

**mod-us**, -i, masc., 2, *measure, degree, manner* ; mirum in modum, *to a wonderful extent* ; ejus modi, *of that kind*.

**moen-ia**, -ium, neut., 3, *town walls, defences*. [mūnio.]

**mōliment-um**, -i, neut., 2, *exertion, effort, heavy labour*. [mōl-es, mōl-ior.]

**mon-s**, mon-tis, masc., 3, *mountain*.

**mor-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *delay* ; sine morā, *without delay, immediately*.

- mor-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *to delay, linger; trans. to hinder, detain.*
- mor-s**, mor-tis, fem., 3, *death.*
- mos**, mōr-is, masc., 3, *custom, usage; suo mōre, according to his custom; plur. mor-es, -um, manners, character, institutions.*
- Mos-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *the river Meuse.*
- mov-eo**, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum, verb 2, *to move, disturb; castra movet, he 'breaks' camp.*
- mulier**, -is, fem., 3, *a woman.*
- multitūd-o**, -inis, fem., 3, *large number, crowd:* [from
- mult-us**, -a, -um, *many, in large numbers or quantity (see note on 21, 518); adv. multum, to a great extent.*
- mūn-io**, -īre, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, verb 4, *fortify, protect.*  
[cp. munitions.]
- mūnīt-iō**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *fortification, intrenchment.*
- mūn-us**, -eris, neut., 3, *a service; present, gift.*  
[cp. remuneration.]
- mūr-us**, -i, masc., 2, *wall, protection.*
- nam** } conj. 'for.' N.B. not  
**namque** } the preposition 'for.'
- nancisc-or**, -i, nactus, verb dep. 3, *obtain, find.*
- nasc-or**, -i, nātus, verb dep. 3, *to be born, to arise, spring.*  
[cp. Natal.]
- nāt-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *race, nation.*
- nātū** (abl. of nātus), *by birth; natu major = older.*
- nātūr-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *nature, natural quality.*
- nāvicul-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *boat:*  
[dim. of
- nāv-is**, -is, fem., 3, *a ship, vessel; navis longa, ship of war.* [no, nāre, swim.]
- nē**, conj., *lest, that ... not;* negative of 'ut' in 'final' clauses (see note on p. 23, l. 553); *ne quis ..., lest any one, i.e. that no one ...; ne hoc dixeris (perf. subj.), don't say this; ne ... quidem, not even ...*
- nē**, interrog., attached to first word in an ordinary question, or to the first alternative in a double question.
- nec** (=neque), *neither, nor; and ... not.*
- necessāri-us**, -a, -um, adj., *necessary; related.* [hence
- necessāri-o**, adv., *necessarily, of necessity.*
- necessitūd-o**, -inis, fem., 3, *relationship, friendship.*
- nec-ne**, *or not*, in second part of indirect question (24, 586).
- nec-o**, verb 1, *to kill; with igni, burn to death.*



**negleg-o**, -ere, neglexi, neglectum, verb 3, *neglect, pass over*.

[nec, lego, *fail to pick up*.]

**negōti-um**, -i, neut., 2, *business, matter*; quid ... negotii, *what business* (8, 150).

[nec, ōtium, *ease*.]

**nēm-o**, acc. -inem (gen. nullius), *no one*; dat. nulli, p. 37, 107 (see note). [ne, homo.]

**neque** = nec. ('neque' may be used before vowels or consonants, 'nec' before consonants only.)

**nēve** or **neu** = nē-ve, and (or or) *that ... not in 'final' clauses*.

**nex**, necis, fem., 3, *death*.

[cp. nec-o.]

**nihil**, indec. noun and adv., *nothing, not at all*; also noun: nihilum, gen. nihili, *of no account*; abl. nihilo with comparatives; nihilo setius, *none the less*.

[ne ... hilum, *not a bit*.]

**nī-sī**, conj., *if not, unless, except*.

**nōbil-is**, -e, adj., *well known, noble, of good reputation, or high birth*; also as noun: 'a noble.' [no-sco]: [hence

**nōbili-tas**, -tātis, fem., 3, *nobility, high birth; the aristocracy*.

**noctū**, adv., *by night*.

[nox]: [hence

**nocturn-us**, -a, -um, adj., *nightly, by night*.

**nō-lo**, nolle, nōlui, verb irreg. 3, *be unwilling, refuse* (with infin.).

[non volo, cp. *willy-nilly* = *will-he, nill-he*.]

**nōm-en**, -inis, neut., 3, *a name, fame, that by which one is known*. [no-sco.]

**non-null-i**, -ae, -a, adj., *some, several* (not none).

**nost-er**, -ra, -rum, adj., *our*; nostr-i, -ōrum, *our men*, i.e. *the Romans*. [nos.]

**nov-us**, -a, -um, adj., *new*; novae res, *novelties*; *revolution*; novissimum proelium, *the last battle*; novissimum agmen, *the rearguard*.

**nox**, noctis, fem., 3, *night*.

**null-us**, -a, -um, adj., gen. nullius, *no, no one*.

**numer-us**, -i, masc., 2, *number*; abl. numero, *in number*.

**nunc**, adv., *now, at the present day*.

**nunquam**, adv., *never*.

[ne, unquam.]

**nunti-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, verb 1, *to announce, report*.

**nunti-us**, -i, masc., 2, *a messenger; news*.

**nūper**, adv., *lately*.

[novum, per, cp. *semper*.]

**nūt-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *a nod; will, pleasure*. [nuo.]

**ob**, prep. with acc., *on account of*; *quam ob rem*, *wherefore, for this reason*.

**ob-ic-io**, ob-icere, ob-jēci, ob-jectum, verb 3, *throw or put before, present, expose*.  
[ob, jacio, cp. object.]

**ob-it-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *death, destruction*. [ob, eo.]

**ob-serv-o**, verb 1, *keep, heed, observe*.

**obs-es**, -idis, com., 3, *hostage, surety*.

**ob-sid-eo**, -ēre, ob-sēdi, ob-sessum, verb 2, *sit down against, besiege* (with acc.).  
[ob, sedeo]: [hence

**ob-sidi-o**, -ōnis, fem., 3, *a siege*.

**ob-sign-o**, verb 1, *to sign and seal* (with testamenta, wills). [signum.]

**ob-string-o**, -ere, -strinxi, -strictum, verb 3, *to bind* (jurejurando, *with an oath*).  
[cp. strict.]

**ob-tin-eo**, -ēre, ob-tinui, obtentum, verb 2, *to keep, hold, retain*.

**oc-cās-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *setting* (sōlis). [ob, cādo, fall.]

**occīd-o**, -ere, occīdi, occīsum, verb 3, *kill*. [ob caedo.]

**occulto**, adv., *in secret*.  
[from p.p.p. of occulo, *hide*.]

**oc-cupat-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *business, duties*: [from

**oc-cup-o**, verb 1, *seize, take possession of* (with acc.).  
[ob, capio.]

**oc-curr-o**, -ere, oc-curri, occursum, verb 3, *run up against, meet, deal with, fall in with, attack* (with dat.).

**of-fero**, of-ferre, ob-tuli, oblātum, verb irreg. 3, *offer, expose, inflict*; *bestow* (with acc. and dat); *se hostibus obtulit, he exposed himself to the enemy*. [ob, fero.]

**offici-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a service, duty, obligation*.  
[opem, facio.]

**omnīno**, adv., *altogether*; *at all*; *in all, in general*: [from

**omn-is**, -e, adj., *all*; *omnia*, neut. plur., *everything*.

**on-us**, oneris, neut., 3, *weight, load, burden*. [cp. onerous.]

**op-em** (no nom), -is, abl. ope, fem., 3, *might*; *help, assistance*; plur. opes, -um, *property, wealth, resources*.

**opīn-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *belief, opinion*; *rumour*; *reputation*. [opinor, dep. 1.]

**oport-et**, -ēre, -uit, impers. verb 2, *it behoves, it is right* (with acc. and infin., or 'ut' and subj.); *me hoc facere oportuit, I ought to have done this*.

**oppidān-i**, -ōrum, 2, *towns-people* : [from

**oppid-um**, -i, neut., 2, *town, stronghold*.

[ob, pedum, *i.e.* overlooking the plain.]

(The numerous old 'camps' in Britain were 'oppida,' e.g. 'British Camp,' Malvern, Maiden Castle, Dorchester, etc.)

**opportūn-us**, -a, -um, adj., *favourable, fortunate*.

[ob, portus, *harbour*.]

**op-prim-o**, -ere, -pressi, -pres-sum, verb 3, *crush, overwhelm*.

[ob, premo.]

**op-pugn-o**, verb 1, *attack, storm* (with acc.).

**optim-us**, -a, -um, irreg. superl. (bonus, melior, optimus), *best*.

[cp. optimist.]

**op-us**, op-eris, neut., 3, *work, task*; magn(o) opere, *a great deal, greatly*; tant(o) opere, *to such an extent*; opus est (with abl.), *there is need of* (cp. p. 16, 373, and note).

**orāt-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *speech*; orationem habere, *make a speech*.

[oro 1.]

**ord-o**, -inis, masc., 3, *line, row, rank*.

[cp. extraordinary.]

**or-ior**, or-iri, or-tus, verb 4 (sometimes 3, oreretur, etc.), *arise, spring, be descended from*.

[cp. oriental.]

**ornamen-tum**, -i, neut., 2, *decoration, distinction*; 'orna-

mento' is used as dat. of complement, *a distinction*.

**ōv-um**, -i, neut., 2, *an egg*.

[cp. oval.]

**pāc-o**, verb 1, *to make peaceful; subdue* (p.p.p. pācātus).

[pax, pāc-is.]

**paene**, adv., *almost, nearly*.

[cp. pen-insula.]

**pag-us**, -i, masc., 2, *a division, district, canton*.

[cp. pagan.]

**pal-ūs**, -ūdis, fem., 3, *a marsh, swamp*.

**pand-o**, -ere, pandi, passum or pansum, verb 3, *open, spread, stretch out*.

[cp. expanse.]

**par**, adj., gen. par-is, *like, equal*.

[cp. pair.]

**parāt-us**, -a, -um, adj., *ready* : [from

**par-o**, verb 1, *to prepare, get ready*.

[cp. preparation.]

**par-s**, par-tis, fem., 3, *a part; direction, point of the compass*; ad alteram partem, *on the other side*; *fraction*; tertia pars =  $\frac{1}{3}$ , duae partes =  $\frac{2}{3}$  : [hence

**partim**, adv., *partly*.

**parvul-us**, -a, -um, adj., *very small, tiny*.

[dim. of parvus.]

**passim**, adv., *hither and thither, in all directions*.

[pando.]

**pass-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *a pace, step*, as a measurement it counts as five feet, *i.e.* a step with both feet; so

- mille passūs = *a mile* (slightly shorter than an English mile).
- pate-fac-io**, -ere, -fēci, -factum, verb 3, *to lay open, disclose*; pass. pate-fio, -fieri, -factus: [from
- pat-eo**, -ēre, -ui, verb 2, *to be or lie open, extend*. [cp. patent.]
- pat-er**, pat-ris, masc., 3, **father**; patres, plur., *the senate*.
- pat-ior**, -i, passus, verb dep. 3, *suffer, allow*. [cp. compassion.]
- pauc-us**, -a, -um, adj., *few, little* (generally in plural).
- paul-ātim**, adv., *little by little, gradually*.
- paul-isper**, adv., *for a short time*: [both from
- paul-um**, adv., *a little* (acc. of a noun, paulus, *a small quantity*).
- paul-o**, adv. (by) *a little* (with comp., paulo longius, *a little further*).
- pax**, pāc-is, fem., 3, *peace*. [cp. pac-iscor, pango.]
- pecc-o**, verb 1, *to transgress, do wrong*.
- pecūni-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *money*; originally = *property* in
- pec-us**, pec-oris, neut., 3, *cattle*. [cp. pa-sco.]
- ped-es**, -itis, masc., 3, *a foot-soldier*. [pes, eo.]
- pēj-or**, pēj-us, comp. adj. (of malus, *bad*), *worse*.
- pell-is**, -is, fem., 3, *skin, hide*; (*tent*). [fell, cp. fell-monger, a dealer in skins.]
- pell-o**, -ere, pepuli, pulsum, verb 3, *drive, drive out, expel*; *repulse, defeat*.
- pend-o**, -ere, pependi, pensum, verb 3, *weigh out, pay*. [cp. expensive.]
- per**, prep. with acc., *through, over, by means of, through the agency of*; per cruciatum, *with torture*; per se, *by themselves*; per populum Romanum, *through the (agency of the) Roman people*; and see note on p. 20, 494.  
(In compounds = *to the end*, e.g. perficio.)
- percontāt-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *inquiry*.
- per-eo**, -ire, perii, peritum, verb irreg., *to perish, be destroyed*. [per, eo.]
- per-fero**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, verb irreg. 3, *to bear, endure* (emphatic form of 'fero').
- per-ficio**, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, verb 3, *finish, complete, carry through*. [per, facio.]
- perfid-i-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *treachery*. [fides.]
- perīcul-um**, -i, neut., 2, *trial, experiment*; *danger*. [ex-per-ior]: [hence
- perīculōs-us**, -a, -um, adj., *dangerous, risky*.

**per-man-eo**, -ēre, -mansi, -man-sum, verb 2, *remain, stay permanently; persist.*

**per-mitt-o**, -ere, -misi, -missum, verb 3, *entrust, commit; give leave, grant; potestatem tibi permitto, I entrust power to you; often with 'ut' and subj.*

**per-mulc-eo**, -ēre, permulsi, permulsum, verb 2, *soothe, appease, calm down* (trans.).

**pernici-es**, -ei, fem., 5, *ruin, disaster.*

[per, neco, cp. pernicious.]

**per-pauc-i**, -ae, -a, adj., *very few.*

**per-petu-us**, -a, -um, adj., *lasting, constant; in perpetuum, for ever.*

**per-sequor**, -sequi, -secutus, verb dep. 3, *follow, pursue.*  
[cp. persecute.]

**per-spic-io**, -ēre, perspexi, perspectum, verb 3, *examine, inspect, perceive.*

[per, specio.]

**per-suād-eo**, -ēre, persuāsi, persuāsum, verb 2, *to persuade* (with dat. of person persuaded). (cp. note, 13, 278.)

**per-terr-eo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, verb 2, *to frighten thoroughly; perterritus, panic stricken.*

**per-tināci-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *obstinacy, persistency.* [per, teneo.]

**per-tin-eo**, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, verb 2, *to stretch, extend; have a tendency, point* (see 45, 156, and note).

**perturb-o**, verb 1, *disturb, throw into panic.*

**pes**, ped-is, masc., 3, *foot.*

[cp. pedal.]

**pet-o**, -ere, petii, petiitum, verb 3, *make for, try to get, seek; ask for; make a request* (with acc. of thing sought: pacem ab eo peto).

**phalan-x**, phalan-gis, fem., 3, *a phalanx, compact mass* (of troops). (The famous Macedonian phalanx was sixteen deep, fifty men abreast.)

**pil-um**, -i, neut., 2, *javelin, spear* (see note on 26, 615).

**pisc-is**, -is, masc., 3, *fish.*

**plac-eo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, verb 2, *to be pleasing, to please* (with dat.); often used impersonally: Caesari placuit ..., *Caesar resolved ..., i.e. it seemed good to Caesar.*

**plāniti-es**, -ei, fem., 5, *a plain, level ground.* [plānus, adj.]

**pleb-s**, plēb-is, fem., 3, *the common people.*

[cp. plebeian.]

**plerumque**, adv., *for the most part, generally.*

**plūs**, neut. comp. of multus, used as adv. and noun, *more; plus animi, more courage; gen. pluris, of more value; in plur. plūr-es, plūr-a, as adjective.*

**pollic-eor**, -ēri, pollicitus, verb  
dep. 2, *to promise*.

**pond-us**, -eris, neut., 3, *weight*.

**popul-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep.  
1, *to ravage, lay waste* : [from

**popul-us**, -i, masc., 2, *the people, nation, population*. (N.B.—not = 'people' as in 'many people'.)

**port-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *a gate*  
(of a town).

**port-o**, verb 1, *carry, convey*.

**posc-o**, -ere, poposci, verb 3,  
*demand, make a demand*.

**pos-sess-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3,  
*possession* ; *land possessed* :  
[from

**pos-sid-eo**, -ēre, possēdi, pos-  
sessum, verb 2, *to occupy, hold, possess*. [sedeo.]

**pos-sum**, posse, potui, verb  
irreg., *have power, be able, can* ; *quid ... possint, what they can do* (10, 196) ; *quam celerrime (potuit), as quickly as possible*, the verb being often omitted ; *potest fieri ut ... it is possible that ...*  
[potis, old adj., sum.]

**post**, prep. with acc., *after ; behind* ; also adv., *so multis post annis, many years after*, = *post multos annos*.

**postea**, adv. = *post, afterwards*.

**post ... quam**, conj. } *after, i.e.*  
**postea ... quam** ,, } *after the*  
*time when, or when* : separately or as one word. (The addition of 'quam' makes an adv. or prep. into a conj., as in French, pendant, during (prep.), pendant que (conj.), while.)

**postrīdie**, *on the next day* ; often with gen., p. ejus diei, *on the next day after that (day)*. [posterus, dies.]

**postul-o**, verb 1, *demand* ; *I demand this of you* = *a te hoc postulo* (often followed by 'ut' or 'ne' with subj.). [posco] : [hence

**postulāt-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a demand (i.e. a thing demanded, p.p.p.)*.

**pot-ens**, adj., gen. -entis (pres. part. of possum), *powerful* (comp. potentior, potentissimus) : [hence

**potentāt-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *power, dominion*.

**potes-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *power, ability, opportunity, chance* (cp. 23, 571) ; *pugnandi potestatem, an opportunity for fighting*.

**potius**, comp. adv. (from old adj. potis) with quam, *in preference to, rather (than)*.

**prae**, prep. with abl., *in comparison with* (32, 37) ; *in consideration of* ; *prae (before), prior, primus*.

**prae-acūt-us**, -a, -um, adj.,  
*sharpened at the end.*

**prae-cav-eo**, -ēre, -cāvi, -cau-  
tum, verb 2, *to take pre-  
cautions beforehand.*

**prae-cipit-o**, verb 1, *throw  
headlong.*

[praeceps, prae, caput.]

**prae-cipu-ē**, adv., *especially.*

[prae, capio.]

**prae-dīc-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,  
verb 1, *assert, declare, say*  
(in a boasting manner);  
(be careful to distinguish  
from praedico, 3).

**praed-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep.  
1, *to make booty; to plunder.*

[praeda.]

**prae-fect-us**, -i, masc., 2, *an  
officer, i.e. one set over;*  
*especially an officer of*  
*cavalry or auxiliary troops:*

[from

**prae-fic-io**, -ficere, -fēci, -fec-  
tum, verb 3, *to set ... over,*  
*put ... in command* (with acc.  
and dat.); *eum legioni*  
*praefecit, he put him in*  
*command of the legion.*

[facio.]

**prae-mitt-o**, -ere, -mīsi, -mis-  
sum, verb 3, *send forward,*  
*send on ahead.*

**praemi-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a  
reward.*

[prae, emo.]

**prae-pōn-o**, -ere, -posui, -posi-  
tum, verb 3, *set over, put in*  
*command* = praeficio.

**prae-scrib-o**, -ere, -scripsi,  
-scriptum, verb 3, *give orders*  
*or instructions:*

[hence

**prae-script-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a  
command, instruction.*

[cp. prescription.]

**praesen-s**, adj., gen. praesen-tis,  
*present, on the spot.*

[prae, sum.]

**prae-sertim**, adv., *especially,*  
*particularly.*

[prae, sero.]

**praesidi-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a  
defence, guard, garrison, es-  
cort; fortified post.* [sedeo.]

**prae-sto**, -stāre, -stiti, verb 1,  
*to stand out, be superior;*  
*as impers., praestat, it is*  
*preferable, better.*

**prae-sum**, -esse, -fui, verb, *to*  
*be at the head* (as pass. to  
praeficio, with dat.); *qui*  
*equitatu praerat, who was*  
*in command of the cavalry*  
(26, 628).

**praeter**, prep. with acc., *past,*  
*along; besides; contrary to:*

[hence

**praetereā**, adv., *besides, more-  
over.*

**praetōri-us**, -a, -um, adj., *of*  
*or belonging to a general*  
(see note on 14, 325).

**prāv-us**, -a, -um, adj., *ill-  
shapen, ugly, bad.*

**prem-o**, -ere, pressi, pressum,  
verb 3, *press, press hard,*  
*weigh down.*

**preti-um**, -i, neut., 2, *value, price; reward; operae pretium, worth while.*

**prīdie**, adv., *on the day before* (cp. postridie). [prae, dies.]

**prīm-us**, -a, -um, superl. adj. from prae (comp. prior, primus), *first, foremost*; hence the adverbs, primum, *in the first place*; primo, *at first* (in point of time).

**princeps**, principis, masc., 3, *chief man, chief; leader, originator*; also as adj., *taking the lead.*

[primum, capio.]

**principat-us**, -ūs, masc, 4, *chieftainship, sovereignty.*

[princeps.]

**pristin-us**, -a, -um, adj., *former, previous, old.*

[from prae ... as crastinus, from cras, *of to-morrow.*]

**prius**, comp. adv., *before, formerly*; generally with 'quam' (see note 19, 443). See primus.

**privāt-us**, -a, -um, adj., *separate, private.*

**prō**, prep. with abl., *in front of; in defence of; instead of, in accordance with, as*; te pro hoste habebo, *I will treat you as an enemy* (19, 461).

(In compound verbs, 'pro' or 'prod' = ... '*forward.*')]

**prob-o**, verb 1, *approve (of), regard as good* (with acc.).

[probus, *good.*]

**prō-cēdo**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, verb 3, *go forward, advance.*

**Prōcillus**, -i, 2, a Gaul, a friend of Caesar (see note, 21, 514.)

**prō-curr-o**, -ere, -curri, -cursum, verb 3, *run or hurry forward.*

**prōd-eo**, -īre, -ii, -itum, verb irreg., *go forward, come out* (of a crowd).

[pro = prod, eo.]

**prōdit-or**, -ōris, masc., 3, *betrayor, traitor.*

[prō-do, *betray.*]

**prō-dūco**, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, verb 3, *lead out; produce, lengthen.*

**proeli-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *to engage in battle, fight*:

[from

**proeli-um**, -i, neut., 2, *battle.*

**prō-ficio**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, verb 3, *advance, make progress.* [facio]: [hence

**pro-ficisc-or**, -i, profectus, verb dep. 3, *to set out, start.*

**pro-fit-eor**, -ēri, professus, verb dep. 2, *declare publicly, volunteer, profess.*

**pro-fug-io**, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitum, verb 3, *run away, escape.*

**prō-gnāt-us**, -a, -um, adj., *sprung, descended.* [nascor.]

**prō-gred-ior**, -i, progressus, verb dep. 3, *advance, proceed, progress.* [gradior.]



**pro-hib-eo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, verb 2, *prevent, stop* (with acc. and infin., 42, 71, or 'ab' with abl.). [pro, habeo.]

**prō-(j)icio**, pro-icere, pro-jēci, pro-jectum, verb 3, *throw, throw forward, throw away*.

**prō-mov-eo**, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, verb 2, *move forward, advance* (trans.).

**prope**, adv., and prep. with acc., *near, nearly*; comp. propius, proxime: [hence

**propinqu-us**, -a, -um, adj., *near*; plur., propinqui, *relations*.

**propinqui-tas**, -tātis, fem., 3, *nearness, relationship*.

**prō-pōn-o**, -ere, -posui, -positum, verb 3, *set forward, point out*.

**propri-us**, -a, -um, adj., *belonging to one's self, special, proper*.

**propter**, prep. with acc., *on account of*: [hence

**propterea**, adv., *for this reason*; (often followed by quod ..., *namely that*).

**prō-puls-o**, verb 1, *defeat, drive away*.

**prōvinci-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *a province* (under Roman government), *a colony*.

**proxim-us**, -a, -um, superl. adj., *from prope, nearest, next, last*; with acc. (as prope); proximi Rhenum, *nearest (to) the Rhine*.

**publicē**, adv., *as a nation, in a national way*.

**pud-or**, -ōris, masc., 3, *shame; honour*. [cp. impudent.]

**pu-er**, -eri, masc., 2, *a boy*; a pueris, *from boyhood*.

**pugn-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *a battle*.

**pugn-o**, verb 1, *to fight*; often as impers. in pass., pugnatum est, *a (or the) battle was fought*.

**purg-o**, verb 1, *purify; justify, excuse*. [cp. purge.]

**put-o**, verb 1 (*to prune trees* [cp. amputate]; *to settle accounts*); *to think, consider*.

**quaer-o**, -ere, quaesīvi (quaesii), quaesītum, verb 3, *ask, inquire, seek* (ab aliquo):

[hence

**quaes-tor**, -tōris, masc., 3, quaestor (see note on 24, 607).

**quamobrem** = quam ob rem, *for which or what reason, wherefore* (rel. and interrog.).

**quamvis**, adv. and conj., *however, to whatsoever degree*.

**quant-us**, -a, -um, adj., *how great* (interrog.); *as great as ...* (rel.); neut. quantum (often as adverb), *as far as, as much ... as* (see note on 56, 15).

**quārē** = quā rē, *for which reason, wherefore, why* (rel. and interrog.).

**quart-us**, -a, -um, adj., **fourth**; pars quarta =  $\frac{1}{4}$  (as in English).

**quattuor**, num. indec., **four**.

**quattuor-decim**, num. indec., **fourteen**.

**-que**, conj., *and* (attached to the second of two words joined together, or to the first word in the second clause); -que ... et or et ... que, *both ... and*.

**quemadmodum** = quem ad modum, *as (i.e. in the manner in which)*.

**quer-or**, -i, questus, verb dep. 3, *complain*. [cp. querulous.]

**quiēt-us**, -a, -um, adj., *at peace, quiet*; (p.p.p. of qui-esco, 3).

**quī, quae, quod**, rel. adj. and pron., *who, which, what*; also interrog., *which, what*; also indef., 22, 547; see quis (2).

**quī-cumque** (declined as 'qui'), *whoever, whatever*.

**quī-dām**, quae-dam, quod-dam, adj., *a certain (man, etc.)*.

**quīdem**, adv., used to emphasize pronouns, etc., *indeed*; ne ... quīdem, *not even ...*

**quīn**, conj., with verbs of (a) doubting, *that, but that*; (b) of hindering, when used with a neg. (see note, 5, 73; 7, 125; 21, 510; 44, 113). adv., *moreover* (often quin etiam). [qui, ne.]

**quī-nam**, quae-nam, quod-nam, adj., emphatic interrog., *who, what?* (32, 35).

**quin-decim**, num. indec., **fifteen**.

**quin-genti**, -ae, -a, num. adj., **five hundred**.

**quin-qua-ginta**, num. indec., **fifty**.

**quinque**, num., indec., **five**.

**quint-us**, -a, -um, adj., **fifth**.

**quis** (1), quid, interrog. pron., *who, what?*

**quis** (2), qua, quid, indef. pron., *any one, anything* (used with si, ne, cum, ubi).

**quis-quam**, quaequam, quicquam, indef. adj. and pron., *any (at all)*; generally in neg. sentences (excluding all), contr. qui-vis.

**quis-que**, quaeque, quidque, or quodque, adj. and pron., *each, every*.

**quī-vis**, quae-vis, quodvis, or quidvis, indef. adj. and pron., *any (you please) (i.e. including all)*.

**quo**, adv., *whither, to what place*; (si) quo, *in any direction*; conj., *in order that* = 'ut' with comparatives, e.g. quo minus; and see note on 40, 31.

**quoad**, conj., *until; as long as*.

**quod**, conj., *because; as to ...; for the fact that*.

**quoniam**, conj., *since, because*.

**quoque**, adv., *also, as well.*

**quotannis**, adv., *every year.*

[quot, annus.]

**quotidiān-us**, -a, -um, adj.,  
*daily* (=cotidianus.)

**quotidiē**, adv., *every day*  
(=cotīdiē.) [quot dies.]

**rādix**, -icis, fem., 3, *root; foot*  
(of a hill). [cp. radical.]

**raed-a**, -ae, fem., 1, (four-  
wheeled) *waggon.*

**rapidi-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *swift-  
ness, speed.* [rapidus, rapio.]

**rati-o**, -ōnis, fem., 3, *calcula-  
tion; reasoning power;  
science; strategy; condition.*  
[reor, rat-us, cp. rational.]

**rec-ens**, adj., gen. -entis, *fresh,  
recent, late.*

**re-cip-io**, -ere, recēpi, receptum,  
verb 3, *take back, take;*  
generally with 'se,' *betake  
oneself, retire; recover* (from),  
*rally.* [re, capio.]

**recūs-o**, verb 1, *refuse, cast off;*  
*shrink from* (with acc. or  
'quin' ..., : see 44, 113).

[causa.]

**red-do**, reddere, reddidi, reddi-  
tum, verb 3, *give back,  
restore.* [re(d), do.]

**red-eo**, -īre, -ii, -itum, verb  
irreg., *go back, return.*

[re(ā), eo.]

**redig-o**, -ere, redēgi, redactum,  
verb 3, *subdue, reduce, make.*

[re(d), ago.]

**redim-o**, -ere, redēmi, redemp-  
tum, verb 3, *buy back;*  
*win.*

[re(d), emo, cp. redemption.]

**re-duc-o**, -ere, -duxi, -ductum,  
verb 3, *lead or bring back.*

**re-fero**, re-ferre, ret-tuli, re-  
lātum, verb irreg. 3, *bring  
back; relate, report; gratiam  
referre, to show gratitude.*

**re-fring-o**, -ere, re-fregi, re-  
fractum, verb 3, *break, break  
down.* [re, frango.]

**regi-o**, -ōnis, fem., 3, *district,  
region.* [rego.]

**re-icio**, re-icere, re-jēcī, re-  
jectum, verb 3, *throw away,  
reject.* [re, jacio.]

**relinqu-o**, -ere, reliqui, relictum,  
verb 3, *leave* (behind), *aban-  
don, desert.*

**reliqu-us**, -a, -um, adj., *re-  
maining; plur. the rest, as  
noun or as adj.; reliqui  
hostes, the rest of the enemy.*

**re-man-eo**, -ēre, -mansī, -man-  
sum, verb 2, *to remain, stay  
behind.*

**re-migr-o**, verb 1, *to go back*  
(used of a population).

**re-mitt-o**, -ere, -mīsī, -missum,  
verb 3, *send back; leave off,  
relax.*

**re-mollesc-o**, -ere, verb 3,  
*become soft or effeminate.*

[mollis.]

- re-mōt-us**, -a, -um, adj. (p.p.p. of *removeo*, 2), *distant, remote*.
- re-mūner-o**, verb 1, *reward*.  
[mun-us, -eris.]
- re-nunti-o**, verb 1, *bring back word, report*.
- repente**, adv., *suddenly* : [hence
- repentin-us**, -a, -um, adj., *sudden*.
- re-per-io**, -īre, *repperi, reperitum*, verb 4, *find, learn*.
- re-praesent-o**, verb 1, *pay ready money; do immediately*. [praesens.]
- repudi-o**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, verb 1, *reject, repudiate*.  
[pudet.]
- res**, rēi, fem., 5, *thing*; translate by some suitable word, e.g. *battle, report, circumstance*, as the context may suggest; *res frumentaria, corn supply*; *res militaris, warfare, practice of war*.  
[re-or, *think*, cp. in English 'thing,' 'think.']
- re-scind-o**, -ere, *rescīdi, rescissum*, verb 3, *cut down, destroy*.
- re-scribo**, -ere, *re-scripsi, rescriptum*, verb 3, *write back; renew, re-enlist, transfer* (see note on 16, 379).
- re-serv-o**, verb 1, *keep, reserve*.
- re-sist-o**, -ere, *restiti, make a stand against, resist* (with dat.).
- re-spond-eo**, -ēre, *respondi, responsum*, verb 2, *to reply, answer* : [hence
- respons-um**, -i, neut., 2, *an answer* (p.p.p.).
- res-public-a**, rei-public-ae, fem., 1, *the state, the commonwealth*.
- re-spu-o**, -ere, -i, verb 3, *reject, refuse*. [spuo, *spit*.]
- re-stitu-o**, -ere, -i, *restitūtum*, verb 3, *restore, bring back*.
- re-tin-eo**, -ēre, *retinui, retentum*, verb 2, *retain, keep back*. [teneo.]
- re-vell-o**, -ere, -velli, -vulsum, verb 3, *tear away*.  
[cp. *revulsion*.]
- re-vert-o**, -ere, *reverti, reversum*, verb 3, *turn back, return* (trans. and intrans.); also as dep., **revert-or**, -i, *reversus*, with same meaning (intrans.).
- rex**, rēgis, masc., 3, *king*.  
[cp. *rēg-o*.]
- Rhēn-us**, -i, masc., 2, *the Rhine*.
- rīp-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *bank, shore*.  
[cp. *rival*.]
- rog-o**, verb 1, *ask*.
- Rōm-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *Rome* :  
[hence
- Rōmān-us**, -a, -um, adj., *Roman*; plur. *Romān-i, -ōrum, 'the Romans'*.
- rūp-ēs**, -is, fem., 3, *a rock, cliff*.
- rursus**, adv., *again*. [re, *versus*.]

**Rutēn-i**, -orum, 2, a tribe in south of Gaul.

**sacrifici-um**, -i, neut., 2, *sacrifice*. [sacer, facio.]

**saep-e**, adv., *often* (comp. saepius, saepissime). [cp. saepes, *hedg*.]

**saepe-numero** = saepe, *often*.

**sal-ūs**, -ūtis, fem., 3, *safety*. [sal-vo.]

**sanc-io**, -īre, sanxi, sanctum, verb 4, *to make sacred, bind, ratify*: [hence p.p.p.

**sanct-us**, -a, -um, adj., *sacred, holy*.

**sāni-tās**, -tātis, fem., 3, *sanity, good sense*. [sānus, adj., *sound*.]

**satis**, adv., *enough, sufficient* (often as noun of quantity with gen.): [hence

**satis-fac-io**, -ere, -fēci, -factum, verb 3, *satisfy, give satisfaction, apologise* (with dat.): [hence

**satis-fact-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *satisfaction, apology*.

**scienti-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *knowledge*: [from

**scio**, scīre, scīvi, scītum, verb 4, *to know*.

**scrib-o**, -ere, scripsi, scriptum, verb 3, *to write*. [cp. scripture.]

**scūt-um**, -i, neut., 2, a shield.

**sē** or **sēsē**, gen. sui, dat. sibi, abl. se, pron. reflexive, 3rd pers., sing. or plur. = *himself, herself, itself, themselves*; no nom.

**sēcrēto**, adv., *secretly, in secret*. [se = *apart*, cerno, crētum.]

**sect-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *a sale* (see note on 37, 94). [seco, sectum.]

**secund-us**, -a, -um, adj. (following), *favourable; second*. [sequor]: [hence

**secundum**, prep. with acc., *after; according to*.

**sed**, conj., *but, however*. [= se in secreto.]

**sēd-ēs**, -is, fem., 3, *a seat, settlement, home*. [sēdeo.]

**semel**, num. adv., *once*. [cp. simul.]

**semper**, adv., *always*. [cp. sem-el and paulisper.]

**senāt-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *assembly of elders, the Senate*. [sen-ex.]

**sententi-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *opinion, decision*: [from

**sent-io**, -īre, sensi, sensum, verb 4, *to think, feel, find out, observe, see*. [cp. sense.]

**sēparāt-us**, -a, -um, adj., *separate, private*. [p.p.p. of se-paro, *set apart*.]

**septim-us**, -a, -um, adj., *seventh*. [septem, 7.]

**septuaginta**, num. indec., *seventy*.

**Sequan-i**, -ōrum, 2, a tribe in Gaul, west of Jura mountains.

**sequ-or**, sequi, secūtus, verb dep. 3, *to follow, pursue.*

[cp. second.]

**servīl-is**, -e, adj., *servile, i.e. connected with slaves* (see note on 13, 288). [servus.]

**servit-us**, -ūtis, fem., 3, *slavery.* [servus.]

**serv-o**, verb 1, *to keep, preserve.*

**sētius**, adv., comp. of secus, *differently*; nihilo setius, *none the less* (23, 563).

**sex**, num. indec., *six.*

**sex-cent-i**, -ae, a, num. adj., *six hundred.*

**si**, conj., *if*; often with quis, qui, etc.; *if anyone ...*; quod si, *but if.*

**sīc**, adv., *thus, so, to such an extent.*

**sīcut**, conj., *so as, just as.*

**significāt-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *a giving of information, signal*: [from

**signific-o**, verb 1, *to make known, publish*: [from

**sign-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a signal*; plur., signa, *'standards,' i.e. emblems of a legion, or cohort (eagles, etc.).*

**silv-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *a wood, forest.*

**simul**, adv., *at the same time, simultaneously.*

**simul ac or atque**, conj., *as soon as.*

**simulāt-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *pretence*: [from

**simul-o**, verb 1, *to pretend.*

**sine**, prep. with abl., *without*; (not to be used except with nouns or pronouns, e.g. you could not translate 'without my knowing it' by using 'sine'). [=se in secrēto.]

**singul-i**, -ae, -a, adj., *one to each, separate, individual.*

**sinis-ter**, -tra, -trum, adj., *left* (opp. to right).

**sin-o**, -ere, sīvi, sītum, verb 3, *allow.*

**soci-us**, -a, -um, adj., *allied*; plur., soci-i, -ōrum, *allies.* [cp. sequ-or.]

**sōl**, sōl-is, masc., 3, *the sun.*

**sōlitūd-o**, -inis, fem., 3, *desert, deserted or uninhabited land.* [sōlus.]

**sōl-us**, -a, -um, adj., gen. -ius, dat. -i, *alone, only.*

**sōlum**, adv., *only.*

**sor-or**, sor-ōris, fem., 3, *sister.*

**sor-s**, sor-tis, fem., 3, *lot* (drawing of lots), *chance, fate.*

**spati-um**, -i, neut., 2, *space, distance*; *time.*

**speci-ēs**, -ēi, fem., 5, *appearance, pretence, show.*

**spect-o**, verb 1, *look at*; *look towards.*

**specul-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *observe*; *act as spy*.

**spēr-o**, verb 1, *to hope* (with acc. and fut. infin.): [from

**spēs**, spēi, fem., 5, *hope, expectation*.

**spīrit-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *breath*; plur., *airs, arrogance*.

[spiro = *breathe*.]

**sponte**, abl. (of an obsolete noun); meā sponte, *of my own free will, spontaneously, 'on my own'*; so with tuā, suā. [cp. spond-co.]

**statim**, adv., *immediately, on the spot*. [sto.]

**statu-o**, -ere, statui, statūtum, verb 3, *set up, fix; resolve, determine*. [sto.]

**statūr-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *size, stature*. [sto.]

**stipendiāri-us**, -a, -um, adj., *paying tribute, tributary*:

[from

**stipendi-um**, -i, neut., 2, *tax, tribute; pay*.

[stips, pay, pendo.]

**stud-eo**, -ēre, -ui, verb 2, *pay attention to, be anxious for, study* (with dat.): [hence

**studi-um**, -i, neut., 2, *zeal, eagerness*.

**sub**, prep. (1) with acc., *up to, towards* (implying motion from below); sub vesperum, *towards evening*.

(2) with abl., *under* (implying rest under).

In compounds, generally implying 'from below.'

**sub-eo**, -īre, -ii, -itum, verb irreg., *come under, come up to, approach* (from below):

[hence

**subit-o**, adv., *suddenly, hurriedly*:

[from

**subit-us**, -a, -um, adj., *sudden*. [subeo.]

**sub-lev-o**, verb 1, *raise, support, lighten*.

**sub-lātus**, see tollo.

**sub-ministr-o**, verb 1, *supply, bring up*,

**subsidi-um**, -i, neut., 2, *aid, help; reserve* (of soldiers); dat., subsidio, *as a help*.

[sub, sedeo.]

**sub-trah-o**, -ere, subtraxi, subtractum, verb 3, *withdraw, take away* (from underneath or secretly).

[cp. subtraction.]

**suc-cēd-o**, -ere, successi, successum, verb 3, *come up; approach* (with acc.); *succeed to* (with dat.). [sub cedo.]

**suc-cīd-o**, -ere, succīdi, succisum, verb 3, *cut down*.

[sub, caedo.]

**Suēb-i**, -orum, 2, a German tribe; (also Suev-i).

[mod., Suabia.]

**suf-fod-io**, -ere, suffossi, suffossum, verb 3, *stab from beneath*. [sub, fodio.]

**Sugambr-i**, -ōrum, 2, a German tribe, on Rhine, north of Cologne. [river Sieg.]

- sum**, esse, fui, verb, *to be* ; fut. infin., fore ; often in phrases, fore or futurum esse ut ..., *it would come about that ...*
- summ-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *sum total* ; *summa imperii*, chief command : [from
- summ-us**, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of super-us, *above*), *highest, very great, extreme* ; in phrases, *summus mons*, *the top of the mountain*. [cp. consummate.]
- sūm-o**, -ere, sumpsi, sumptum, verb 3, *take, take up, assume* ; *exact* (with supplicium, etc.).
- superbe**, adv., *proudly, arrogantly* ; from adj., *superbus*. [super.]
- super-o**, verb 1, *overcome, vanquish*. [super, cp. insuperable.]
- sup-plicāt-io**, -ionis, fem., 3, *public thanksgiving* (see note on 37, 107). [supplex, *suppliant*, plic-o, *bend*.]
- sup-plici-um**, -i, neut., 2 (*act of worship*), *punishment*. [see preceding word.]
- sup-port-o**, verb 1, *bring up*.
- suprā**, adv., *above* ; *in a former place* (of the book) ; prep. with acc., *above, higher up*.
- sus-cip-io**, -ere, sus-cēpi, susceptum, verb 3, *take up, undertake*. [sub capio.]
- su-spici-o**, -ōnis, fem., 3, *suspicion*. [sub, specio.]
- su-spici-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *to suspect*.
- sus-tin-eo**, -ēre, sustinui, sustentum, verb 2, *hold out ; sustain, withstand*. [sub teneo.]
- su-us**, -a, -um, adj., *his, her, its, or their own, i.e. belonging to the (3rd pers.) subject* ; plur., *sui*, *his (or their) men or countrymen*.
- tabernācul-um**, -i, neut., 2, *tent, hut*. [dim. of taberna ; tabula, *plank*.]
- tacit-us**, -a, -um, adj., *silent*. [tac-eo.]
- tam**, adv., *as, so, to such an extent*. [cp. ta-lis, tantus.]
- tamen**, adv., *nevertheless*.
- tandem**, adv., *at length*. [tam, (i)dem.]
- tantul-us**, -a, -um, adj., *so small* : [dim. of
- tant-us**, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so powerful* ; tantopere, adv., *to so great an extent* (cp. magn(o)opere) ; tantum agri, *so much (of) land*.
- tantum**, adv., *so much ; only*.
- tect-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a roof*. [tego.]
- tēl-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a missile (weapon), dart, javelin*.
- temerāri-us**, -a, -um, adj., *rash, headstrong* : [from
- temer-ē**, adv., *rashly, casually*.



- temper-o**, verb 1, *put restraint on, restrain, refrain from* (with dat. of reflexive, followed by quin ... see note on 7, 125).
- tempt-o**, verb 1, *try, put to the test*. [cp. temptation.]
- temp-us**, -oris, neut., 3, *time, season, crisis*. [cp. temporal.]
- Tenctēr-i**, -ōrum, a German tribe, north of Rhine.
- ten-eo**, -ēre, tenui, tentum, verb 2, *to hold, keep*. [cp. detention.]
- terg-um**, -i, neut., 2, *back*; *terga verterunt, they turned their backs, i.e. fled*.
- terr-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *land, earth*: [hence
- terr-ēn-us**, -a, -um, adj., *made of earth or soil*.
- terti-us**, -a, -um, adj., *third*.
- testāment-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a will* ('last will and testament'). [test-or.]
- testimōni-um**, -i, neut., 2, *evidence, proof*: [from
- test-is**, -is, com., 3, *witness*.
- Teuton-i**, -ōrum, 2, a German tribe defeated by Marius.
- tim-eo**, -ēre, -ui, verb 2, *to fear*: [hence
- timid-us**, -a, -um, adj., *timid, afraid*.
- tim-or**, -ōris, masc., 3, *fear, panic*.
- toll-o**, -ere, sustuli, sublātum (as if from subfero), verb 3, *raise, lift, remove; give up*.
- tot**, indec. adj., *so many*: [hence
- tot-idem**, indec. adj., *just as many*.
- tōt-us**, -a, -um, adj., gen. tōtius, dat. tōti, *the whole, all*.
- trab-s**, trab-is, fem., 3, *a beam, timber*.
- trād-o**, -ere, trādidi, tradītum, verb 3, *hand over, give up*. [trans, do, cp. ex-tradition.]
- trā-dūc-o**, -ere, traduxi, traductum, verb 3, *bring or lead across*.
- trah-o**, -ere, traxi, tractum, verb 3, *draw, drag, drag along*. [cp. traction.]
- trān-o**, -āre, verb 1, *to swim across*. [trans, no.]
- trans**, prep. with acc., *across*.
- trans-eo**, -īre, -ii, -itum, verb irreg., *to go across, cross*. [cp. transit.]
- trans-port-o**, verb 1, *bring across*.
- Trans-Rhēnān-us**, -a, -um, adj., *living across the Rhine*.
- tres**, tria, num. adj., *three*,
- Trever-i**, -orum, a powerful Gallic tribe, on Rhine and Moselle; (chief town, Augusta Treverorum = Trier, Trèves).
- tribūn-us**, -i, masc., 2, *a tribune*; tr. militum, *a military tribune*; see Introd., Army.
- tribu-o**, -ere, tribui, tribūtum, verb 3, *to assign*. [cp. attribute.]

**tridu-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a space of three days.*

[tres, dies, cp. fortnight.]

**trienni-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a space of three years.* [tres, annus.]

**trīn-i**, -ae, -a, num. adj., *three each, triple.*

**tripl-ex**, gen. -icis, adj., *three-fold, triple.* [tres, plico.]

**trist-is**, -e, adj., *sad, gloomy :*  
[hence

**tristiti-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *sadness.*

**tu**, gen. tui, pron., *thou.*

**tu-eor**, -ēri, tuitūs, verb dep. 2, *protect, guard.* [cp. tutor.]

**tum**, adv., *then, at that time.*

**tumult-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *a revolt, rebellion ; confusion.*  
[cp. tum-eo, tumour.]

**tumul-us**, -i, masc., 2, *a mound.*  
[tum-eo, swell.]

**turp-is**, -e, adj., *disgraceful.*

**turr-is**, -is, fem., 3, *a tower.*

**ubi**, adv., *when ? ; conj., when*  
(with indic.).

**ulcisc-or**, -i, ultus, verb dep. 3, *avenge ; punish* (with acc.).

**ull-us**, -a, -um, adj., gen. -ius, dat. -i, *any* (in neg. sentences corresponding to quisquam, pronoun, *q.v.*).

**ultim-us**, -a, -um, superl. adj., *furthest :*  
[from

**ultrā**, prep. with acc., *beyond, past* (comp. ulterior).

**ultrō**, adv., *beyond* (what would be expected), *actually, un-asked ; ultro citroque, hither and thither.*

**unā**, adv., *together, along* (with).  
[unus.]

**ūnivers-us**, -a, -um, adj., *all, the whole, en masse.*

[unus, verito.]

**ūn-us**, -a, -um, adj., gen. -ius, dat. -i, *one, alone, single.*

**Ūsipet-es**, -um, 3, *a German tribe, north of Rhine.*

**usque**, adv., *even.*

**ūs-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *use, practice, experience ; ex ūsū, advantageous ; usus est with abl., there is need of ... ; dat. usui, as dat. of complement ; usui erant, were useful.*

[ut-or.]

**ut**, **uti**, conj. with subj., (1) *in order that ...*, (2) *so that ...*, (3) *how ...* in indirect questions ; with indic., *as ; when.*

**uter-que**, **utra-que**, **utrum-que**, adj., *each* (of two), *both.*

**ūtil-is**, -e, adj., *useful.* [utor.]

**ūtili-tas**, -tatis, fem., 3, *use, usefulness, practical purposes.*  
[utilis.]

**ūt-or**, ūti, ūsus, verb dep. 3, *use, enjoy, adopt, accept* (with abl.).

**utrimque**, adv., *on both sides, on each side.*

**utrum**, conj., *whether* (introducing first of two alternatives in a question).

[uter, *which of two* ?]

**ux-or**, -ōris, fem., 3, *wife*.

**vac-o**, verb 1, *to lie vacant; have leisure for* (with dat.).

**vag-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1, *to wander*.

**val-eo**, -ēre, -ui, verb 2, *to be strong, powerful; plurimum valent, are strongest*.

**vall-um**, -i, neut., 2, *rampart, (raised part of) fortification*.

**vast-o**, verb 1, *to lay waste, devastate*.

**vāticināt-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *soothsaying, prophecy*.

[vātes, *a prophet*.]

**vectig-al**, -ālis, neut., 3, *tax, tribute*. [veho]: [hence

**vectigāl-is**, -e, adj., *subject to tax, tributary*.

**vehementer**, adv., *vigorously, fiercely*.

[ve (vehe), mens, *out of ... mind*.]

**vel**, conj., *or*; vel ... vel, *either ... or*. [velle.]

**vēl-ox**, adj., gen. -ōcis, *swift*; (comp. veloc-ior, veloc-issimus).

**velut**, conj., *just as*; velut si, *just as if*.

**vēnāt-io**, -iōnis, fem., 3, *hunting, the chase*.

[ven-or, cp. venison.]

**ven-do**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, verb 3, *sell*. [venum, do.]

**vēn-io**, -īre, vēni, ventum, verb 4, *come*.

**ventit-o**, verb 1, freq. of venio, *come (as a habit), visit*.

**verb-um**, -i, neut., 2, *a word*. [cp. verbal.]

**ver-eor**, -ēri, veritus, verb dep. 2, *fear*. [cp. reverence.]

**vēro**, adv. and conj., *indeed; but, on the other hand*.

[verus.]

**vers-or**, -āri, -ātus, verb dep. 1 (freq. of verto), *to be, remain, be situated*.

[cp. conversation, Psalm 37. 14, etc.]

**vert-o**, -ere, verti, versum, verb 3, *turn (trans.); terga vertunt, they flee*.

**vēr-us**, -a, -um, *true, just, reasonable*.

**Vesont-io**, -iōnis, masc., 3, the town now Besançon on the river Doubs (chief town of the Sequani).

**vesp-er**, -eri, and -eris, masc., 2 and 3, *evening* (also vesper-a, 1).

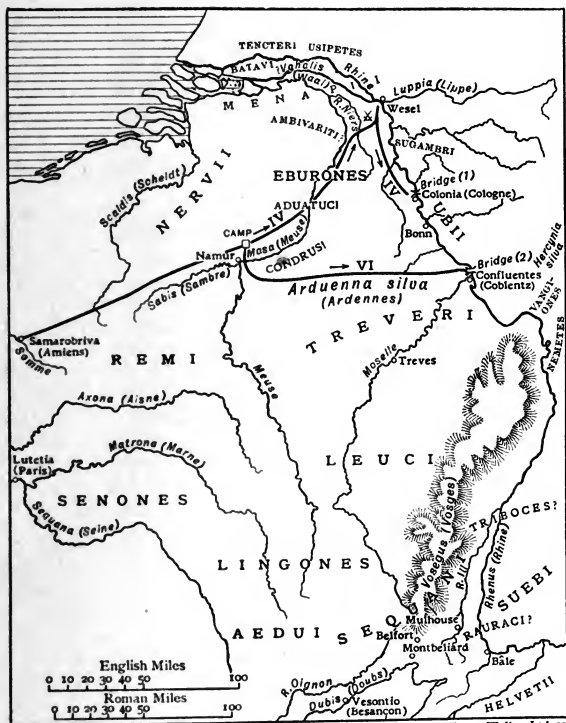
**ves-ter**, -tra, -trum, adj., *your*. [vos.]

**vestīgi-um**, -i, neut., *footprint, trace*. [cp. vestige.]

**vestīt-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *clothing*. [vestio.]

**vetus**, adj., gen. veteris, *old, former*. [cp. veteran.]

- vex-o**, verb 1, *harass, ravage*.
- vic-em**, -is (no nom.), fem., 3, *turn, change*; in *vicem*, *in turns*.
- vict-or**, adj., gen. -ōris, fem. *vict-ix*, -īcis, *victorious, triumphant*. [*vinco*]: [hence
- victori-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *victory*.
- vict-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *food, victuals*. [*vivo*.]
- vīc-us**, -i, masc., 2, *village*.
- vid-eo**, -ēre, vīdi, vīsum, verb 2, *see*; pass. *vid-eor*, -ēri, vīsus; dep., *to appear, to be evident, seem*; impers., *videtur, it seems good*; perf., *visum est*. [*cp. vision*.]
- vigili-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *a watch* (*i.e.* fourth part of night).
- vīginti**, num. indec., *twenty*.
- vīm-en**, -inis, neut., 3, *a withe, osier*.
- vinc-io**, -īre, vinxi, vinctum, verb 4, *bind*. [*cp. vincula*.]
- vinc-o**, -ere, vīci, victum, verb 3, *conquer, be victorious*.
- vīne-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *a shed, mantlet* (see note, 32, 30)  
[= *vineyard*, from
- vīn-um**, -i, neut., 2, *wine*.
- viol-o**, verb 1, *to injure, do violence to* (with acc.) [*vis*.]
- vir-tūs**, -tūtis, fem., 3, *manliness, courage, valour, virtue*. [*vir*, *cp. senec-tus*, from *senex*.]
- vis**, acc. *vim*, abl. *vi*, fem., 3, *violence, force*; plur., *vīr-es*, -ium, *strength, power*.
- vīt-a**, -ae, fem., 1, *life*. [*vivo*.]
- vīt-o**, verb 1, *to avoid*.
- vīv-o**, -ere, vixi, victum, verb 3, *to live*. [*cp. victus*.]
- vol-o**, velle, volui, verb irreg. 3, *to be willing, to want* (see note on 8, 143 and 19, 446): [hence
- volun-tas**, -tātis, fem., 3, *consent, will, wish, inclination*
- volup-tas**, -tātis, fem., 3, *pleasure*.
- Volcān-us**, -i, masc., 2, *Vulcan* (the god of fire).
- vox**, vōcis, fem., 3, *voice, words*.
- vulgō**, adv., *generally*:  
[abl. from
- vulg-us**, -i, neut., (sometimes masc.), *the common people, mass*. [*cp vulgar*.]
- vulner-o**, verb 1, *to wound*.  
[*cp. invulnerable*.]
- vuln-us**, -eris, neut., 3, *a wound*. [*cp. vello* = *tear*.]
- vuit-us**, -ūs, masc., 4, *countenance, expression*.

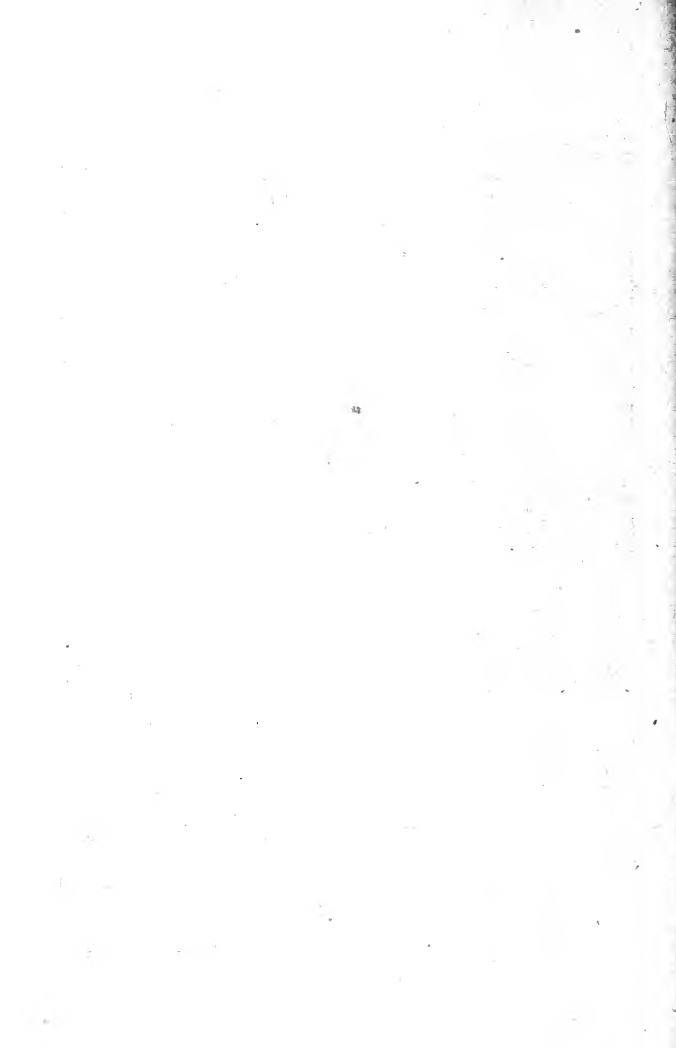


# TO ILLUSTRATE CAESAR'S CAMPAIGNS.

First campaign (Part I.).

Fourth campaign (Part III.). Possible route marked IV.

Sixth campaign (Part IV.). Possible route marked VI.



# MACMILLAN'S ELEMENTARY CLASSICS.

Pott 8vo. Eighteenpence each.

The following contain Introductions, Notes, and Vocabularies, and in some cases Exercises:—

**ACCIDENCE, LATIN, AND EXERCISES ARRANGED FOR BEGINNERS.** By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

**ÆSCHYLUS.—PROMETHEUS VINCTUS.** By Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

**ARRIAN.—SELECTIONS.** With Exercises. By Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**AULUS GELLIUS, STORIES FROM.** Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.

**CÆSAR.—THE HELVETIAN WAR.** Selections from Book I., adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

**THE INVASION OF BRITAIN.** Selections from Books IV. and V., adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By the same.

**SCENES FROM BOOKS V. and VI.** By C. COLBECK, M.A.

**TALES OF THE CIVIL WAR.** By C. H. KEENE, M.A.

**THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK I.** By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**BOOKS II. and III.** By Rev. W. G. RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D.

**BOOK IV.** By CLEMENT BRYANS, M.A.

**BOOK V.** By C. COLBECK, M.A., Assistant Master at Harrow.

**BOOK VI.** By C. COLBECK, M.A.

**BOOK VII.** By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**THE CIVIL WAR. BOOK I.** By M. MONTGOMREY, M.A.

**CICERO.—DE SENECTUTE.** By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

**DE AMICITIA.** By the same.

**STORIES OF ROMAN HISTORY.** Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A., and A. V. JONES, M.A.

**FIRST ORATION AGAINST CATILINA.** By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.

**PRO ARCHIA.** By the same.

**SELECT SPEECHES.** By H. WILKINSON, M.A. *[In the press.]*

**CURTIUS (QUINTUS).—SELECTIONS.** Adapted for Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises. By F. COVERLEY SMITH.

**BOOK VIII. Chaps. IX.—XIV.** By C. J. PHILLIPS, M.A.

**EURIPIDES.—ALCESTIS.** By Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A.

**MEDEA.** By Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A.

**HECUBA.** By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

MACMILLAN'S ELEMENTARY CLASSICS—*Continued.*

**EUTROPIUS.**—Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

Books I. and II. By the same.

**EXERCISES IN UNSEEN TRANSLATION IN LATIN.** By W. WELCH, M.A., and Rev. C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

**HERODOTUS, TALES FROM.** Atticized. By G. S. FARNELL, M.A.

**HOMER.**—ILIAD. Book I. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

Book VI. By WALTER LEAF, Litt.D., and Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD.

Book XVIII. By S. R. JAMES, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton.

Book XXIV. By W. LEAF, Litt.D., and Rev. M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A.

ODYSSEY. Book I. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**HORACE.**—ODES. Books I., II., III. and IV. separately. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.

**LEGENDS OF GODS AND HEROES.** By T. S. MORTON, M.A.

**LIVY.**—Book I. By H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME. Adapted for Beginners by G. H. NALL, M.A.

Book V. By M. ALFORD.

Book XXI. Adapted from Mr. CAPES's Edition. By J. E. MELHUISE, M.A.

Book XXII. Adapted from Mr. CAPES's Edition. By J. E. MELHUISE, M.A.

SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS V. and VI. By W. CECIL LAMING, M.A.

THE HANNIBALIAN WAR. Books XXI. and XXII. Adapted by G. C. MACAULAY, M.A.

Books XXIII. and XXIV. Adapted by E. P. COLERIDGE, B.A.

THE SIEGE OF SYRACUSE. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By G. RICHARDS, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

LEGENDS OF ANCIENT ROME. Adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By H. WILKINSON, M.A.

**LUCIAN.**—EXTRACTS FROM LUCIAN. With Exercises. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**NEPOS.**—SELECTIONS ILLUSTRATIVE OF GREEK AND ROMAN HISTORY. With Exercises. By G. S. FARNELL, M.A.

GREEK LIVES. VOLS. I. and II. By H. WILKINSON, M.A.

[Vol. III. in the press.]

LIVES OF MILTIADES AND EPAMINONDAS. By G. H. NALL, M.A.



MACMILLAN'S ELEMENTARY CLASSICS—*Continued.*

**NOCTES LATINAE.** By WALTER MADELEY, M.A.

**OVID.**—SELECTIONS. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

EASY SELECTIONS FROM OVID IN ELEGIAC VERSE. With Exercises. By H. WILKINSON, M.A.

STORIES FROM THE METAMORPHOSES. With Exercises. By Rev. J. BOND, M.A., and Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

TRISTIA. BOOK I. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

BOOK III. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

**PASSAGES FOR GREEK TRANSLATION FOR LOWER FORMS.** By G. H. PEACOCK, M.A., and E. W. W. BELL, M.A.

**PHAEDRUS.**—FABLES. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.

SELECT FABLES. Adapted for Beginners. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

**PLINY.**—SELECTIONS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ROMAN LIFE. By C. H. KEENE, M.A.

LETTERS. I.-XII. By C. J. PHILLIPS, B.A.

**SALLUST.**—JUGURTHINE WAR. Adapted by E. P. COLERIDGE, B.A.  
THE CATILINE. By G. H. NALL, M.A.

**SUETONIUS.**—STORIES OF THE CAESARS. By H. WILKINSON, M.A.

**TACITUS.**—THE ROMAN CONQUEST OF BRITAIN. By W. MODLEN, M.A.

**THUCYDIDES.**—THE RISE OF THE ATHENIAN EMPIRE. BOOK I.  
Chaps. 89-118 and 128-138. With Exercises. By F. H. COLSON, M.A.

THE FALL OF PLATAEA, AND THE PLAGUE AT ATHENS.  
From Books II. and III. By W. T. SUTHERY, M.A., and A. S. GRAVES, B.A.

BOOK VII. Athenian Disaster in Sicily. By E. C. MARCHANT, M.A.

**VALERIUS MAXIMUS.** By C. H. WARD, M.A.

**VIRGIL.**—SELECTIONS. By E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

BUCOLICS. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.

GEORGICS. BOOK I. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.

BOOK II. By Rev. J. H. SKRINE, M.A.

BOOK III. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.

BOOK IV. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.

AENEID. BOOK I. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

BOOK I. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.

BOOK II. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.

BOOK III. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.

BOOK IV. By Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

BOOK V. By Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.

BOOK VI. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.

## MACMILLAN'S ELEMENTARY CLASSICS—*Continued.*

### **Virgil.**—*Aeneid*—*Continued.*

BOOK VII. By Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.

BOOK VIII. By Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A.

BOOK IX. By Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

BOOK X. By S. G. OWEN, M.A.

BOOK XI. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.

BOOK XII. By T. E. PAGE, M.A.

### **XENOPHON.**—*ANABASIS.* Selections, adapted for Beginners. With Exercises. By W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

BOOK I. With Exercises. By E. A. WELLS, M.A.

BOOK I. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

BOOK II. By Rev. A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

BOOK III. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.

BOOK IV. By Rev. E. D. STONE, M.A.

BOOK V. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.

BOOK VI. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.

BOOK VII. By Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A.

SELECTIONS FROM BOOK IV. With Exercises. By Rev. E. D. STONE, M.A.

SELECTIONS FROM THE CYROPAEDIA. Exercises. By A. H. COOKE, M.A.

TALES FROM THE CYROPAEDIA. With Exercises. By C. H. KEENE, M.A.

SELECTIONS ILLUSTRATIVE OF GREEK LIFE. By C. H. KEENE, M.A.

The following contain Introductions and Notes, but no Vocabulary:—

**CICERO.**—SELECT LETTERS. By Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A.

**HERODOTUS.**—SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS VII. and VIII. THE EXPEDITION OF XERXES. By A. H. COOKE, M.A.

**HORACE.**—SELECTIONS FROM THE SATIRES AND EPISTLES. By Rev. W. J. V. BAKER, M.A.

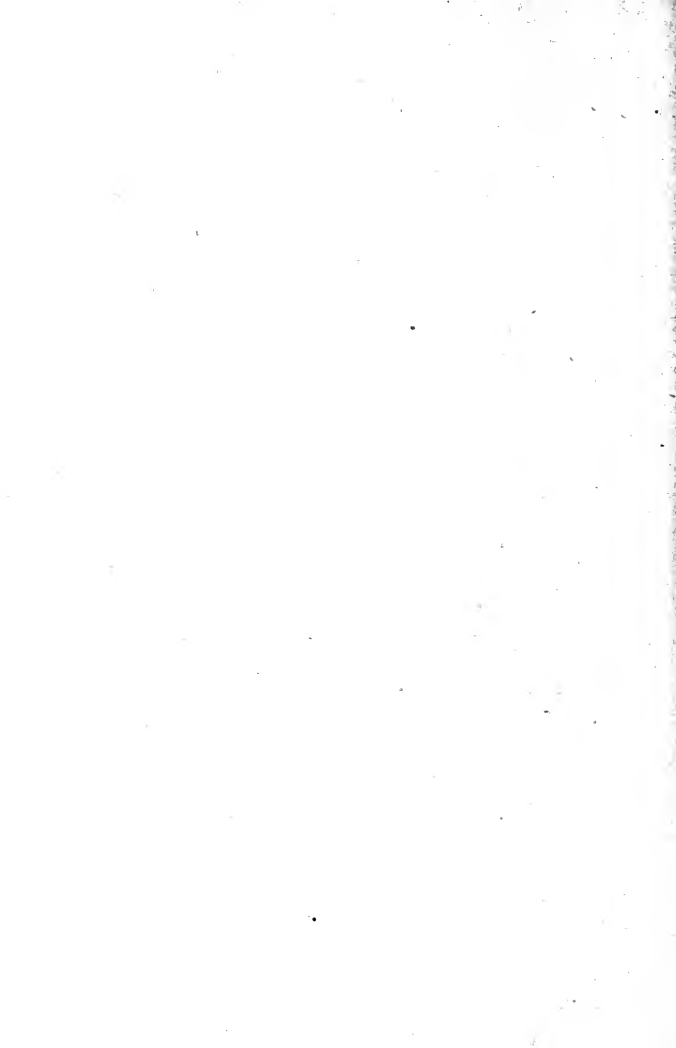
SELECT EPODES AND ARS POETICA. By H. A. DALTON, M.A.

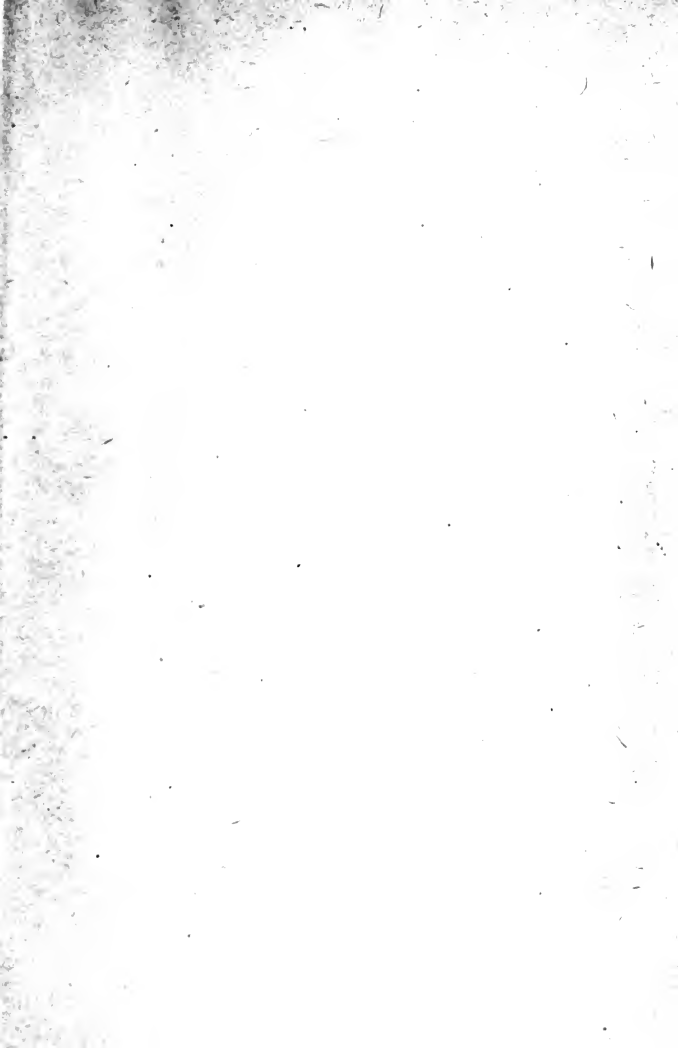
**PLATO.**—EUTHYPHRO AND MENEXENUS. By C. E. GRAVES, M.A.

**TERENCE.**—SCENES FROM THE ANDRIA. By F. W. CORNISH, M.A., Vice-Provost of Eton.

**THUCYDIDES.**—BOOK IV. Chaps. 1-41. THE CAPTURE OF SPHACTERIA. By C. E. GRAVES M.A.







THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE  
STAMPED BELOW

**AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS**

WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN  
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY  
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH  
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY  
OVERDUE.

NOV 6 1936

NOV 7 1936

6 Feb '50 MWA

28 Oct '57 B

REC'D ID

OCT 14 1957

*mkra*  
*2*

YA 04585

360504

PA2096

D2

Ca 1915

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

